

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 831SH.

- For proper handset use, read "First Step Guide" in 831SH Starter Guide and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 831SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**) about unclear or missing information.

Chapter Contents At A Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser	5
Digital TV	6
Camera & Imaging	7
Media Player & S! Applications	8
Handy Extras	9
Entertainment & Communication	10
Handset Security	11
Data Folder & Memory Card	12
Connectivity & File Backup	13
Handset Customization	14
Appendix	15



Notes

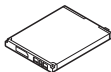
- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with handset open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.

Guide Usage Notes	ii	3 Calling		6 Digital TV	
Table of Contents	iii	Emergency Calls	3-2	Digital TV	6-2
Accessory	v	Voice Calling	3-3	TV Player	6-8
Safety Precautions	vi	Video Calling.....	3-5	TV Timer	6-10
1 Getting Started		Decoration Call	3-6	Additional Functions.....	6-11
Handset Parts	1-2	Speed Dial	3-7	Troubleshooting	6-16
Charging Battery	1-4	Call Log	3-8	7 Camera & Imaging	
Power On/Off	1-6	Call Time & Call Cost	3-9	Camera	7-2
Display & Indicators.....	1-7	Optional Services.....	3-10	Photo Camera	7-4
Accessing Functions	1-11	Additional Functions.....	3-12	Video Camera	7-5
Mobile Manners	1-17	Troubleshooting	3-21	Review	7-6
Security Codes	1-18	4 Messaging		Shooting Modes	7-7
Basic Tools	1-19	Messaging.....	4-2	Editing Images.....	7-9
Double Number	1-21	Sending Messages	4-4	Printing.....	7-14
Additional Functions	1-24	Incoming Messages	4-8	Additional Functions.....	7-15
Troubleshooting	1-27	Handling Messages.....	4-10	Troubleshooting	7-18
2 Basic Operations		Chat Folder	4-13	8 Media Player & S! Applications	
Font Size	2-2	Mail Groups.....	4-14	Media Player.....	8-2
Wallpaper	2-3	PC Mail	4-15	Music	8-4
Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability	2-4	Additional Functions.....	4-18	Video.....	8-5
Sounds & Alerts	2-5	Troubleshooting	4-33	Playlists	8-6
Text Entry	2-6	5 Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser		S! Appli.....	8-7
User Dictionary.....	2-11	Internet Services	5-2	Additional Functions.....	8-8
Dictionary.....	2-12	Yahoo! Keitai.....	5-3	Troubleshooting	8-13
Search	2-14	PC Site Browser	5-4	9 Handy Extras	
Scratch Pad.....	2-15	Browsing	5-5	Calendar & Tasks.....	9-2
Phone Book	2-16	Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-7	Alarms	9-7
Additional Functions	2-19	RSS Feeds.....	5-8	Wakeup TV	9-9
Troubleshooting	2-24	Additional Functions.....	5-9	Calculator	9-11
		Troubleshooting	5-16	Expenses Memo	9-12

Osaifu-Keitai®	9-13	Memory Card	12-5
Simulated Call	9-17	Additional Functions	12-7
Stopwatch	9-18	Troubleshooting	12-9
Countdown Timer	9-19	13 Connectivity & File Backup	
World Clock	9-20	Infrared	13-2
Hour Minder	9-21	IC Transmission	13-5
Document Viewer	9-22	Mass Storage	13-7
Notepad	9-23	Backup	13-8
ASCII Art	9-24	S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) ...	13-10
Voice Recorder	9-25	Additional Functions	13-13
Scan Barcode	9-26	Troubleshooting	13-15
Create QR Code	9-27	14 Handset Customization	
Scan Card	9-28	Date & Time	14-2
Text Scanner	9-29	Display & Illumination	14-3
Additional Functions	9-30	Ringtones & Sounds	14-5
Troubleshooting	9-42	Connectivity	14-6
10 Entertainment & Communication		Reset	14-8
Mobile Widget	10-2	15 Appendix	
S! Quick News	10-5	USIM Card	15-2
S! Information Channel	10-6	Battery	15-4
e-Books	10-7	Software Update	15-5
S! Friend's Status	10-8	Troubleshooting	15-6
S! Circle Talk	10-11	Key Assignments	15-8
Blog Tool	10-13	Pager Codes	15-10
Additional Functions	10-15	Character Codes	15-11
Troubleshooting	10-22	Weather Indicators	15-17
11 Handset Security		Specifications	15-18
Handset Security	11-2	Menu List	15-24
Additional Functions	11-4	Index	15-31
12 Data Folder & Memory Card		Warranty & Service	15-38
Data Folder	12-2	Customer Service	15-39

Accessory

■ Battery (SHBCC1)



- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-39).
- Use specified Charger/Headphones (sold separately) only.

Safety Precautions







Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

 DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 CAUTION	Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

	Prohibited actions
Prohibited	
	Disassembly prohibited
Do Not Disassemble	
	Exposure to liquids prohibited
Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	
	Use with wet hands prohibited
Do Not Use Wet Hands	
	Compulsory actions
Compulsory	
	Unplug Charger from outlet
Disconnect Power Source	

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

DANGER

Use specified battery, Charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder (sold separately) only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Compulsory

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.

Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.



Do Not Disassemble

Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.

Do not leave handset or related hardware wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc., and do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction.

Use them in an appropriate place properly.



Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.



Prohibited

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

WARNING

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; turn handset off before using Osaifu-Keitai® at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).



Compulsory

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, turn off handset, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.



Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from charging terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

CAUTION

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set.



Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory

Safety Precautions

If your child is using handset and related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage. Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

Battery

DANGER

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Do not dispose of battery in fire. Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory

WARNING

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately. May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

CAUTION

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Prohibited

Handset

WARNING

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

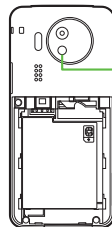


Prohibited

CAUTION:

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 & A2:2001



Mobile Light

■ Mobile Light LED Properties

- a) Emission Duration: Continuous
- b) Wavelength
White: 400 - 700 nm
- c) Maximum Emission Output
White: 310 μ W (620 μ W inside handset)

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.

Accidents may result. Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.



Prohibited

Turn handset power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Compulsory

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.

Handset use may impair aircraft operation. Turning on handset power aboard aircraft is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty.



Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

If thunder is heard while outdoors, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.

Eyesight may be affected.



Prohibited

**CAUTION****Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.**

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Compulsory

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Metal and other materials (P.15-18) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Compulsory

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.



Prohibited

Do not swing handset by strap.

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.



Prohibited

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.



Compulsory

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Prohibited

Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.

May cause injury, breakage, etc.



Compulsory

Watch TV from a distance in good light.

Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.



Compulsory

Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Compulsory

Charger (Sold Separately)

 **WARNING**

Do not charge battery on unstable surfaces.

Handset may fall and disconnect from Charger or malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

• AC Charger (sold separately):

AC 100V-240V Input

• In-Car Charger (sold separately; use in negative earth vehicles only):

DC 12V/24V Input

Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect Power Source

Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately).

Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.



Compulsory

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Disconnect Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with a dry cloth.

Fire may result.



Compulsory

Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) in positive earth vehicles.

May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



Prohibited

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger/Desktop Holder charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.

May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited

 **CAUTION**

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not subject AC Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.

May cause malfunction or injury.



Prohibited

Do not touch charging terminals of Desktop Holder (sold separately) while it is connected to the outlet.

May cause burn injuries.



Prohibited

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "**Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment**"

(Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "**Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc.**" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



WARNING

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:



Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.



Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of files saved on handset/Memory Card. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
 - Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
 - Use handset without disturbing others.
 - Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
 - Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
 - For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
 - **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
- Eavesdropping**
Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back. Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

Handset & Hardware Care

- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures and direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with a dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.

- Connect only specified products to Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not remove Memory Card or turn off handset power while using the card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.
- Do not use Desktop Holder (sold separately) inside vehicles. Vibration may damage handset, etc.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV. After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.14-6**) to restore usability.

Mobile Camera

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

CE Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 831SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address: <http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

Battery - CAUTION

Use specified battery or Charger only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide.^{*} Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
831SH	1.109 W/kg	0.871 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network. The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

^{*}Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.
^{**}Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
 - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
831SH	APYHRO00091	0.590 W/kg	0.450 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at <https://fjallfloss.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm> under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

Rights, Trademarks & Patents

Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsibly.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.
BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Safety Precautions

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application. Powered by JBlend™. Copyright 1997-2009 Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSDHC™, microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2009 ACCESS Co., Ltd.


ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™. Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation. ©2002-2009 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



**ADOBE
FLASH
ENABLED**

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Wakeup TV, VeilView, Smartlink and Animation View are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picstel Technologies.

Picstel, Picstel Powered, Picstel Viewer, Picstel File Viewer, Picstel Document Viewer, Picstel PDF Viewer and the Picstel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picstel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

- Wikipedia
GNU Free Documentation License
Wikipedia is a registered trademark of Wikimedia Foundation, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
- Genius E-J-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Genius JE-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Meikyo J-Dic MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2008
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Hot Pepper Pockets is a registered trademark of Recruit Co., Ltd.
- Amazon.co.jp is a trademark of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

Video Call, S! Application, Customized Screen, Sky Mail, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Multi Job, S! Mail, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Information Channel, S! Town, S! Loop, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, S! Quick News, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Circle Talk, S! Friend's Status, Lifestyle-Appli, S! Familiar Usability, PC Mail, Double Number, Decoration Call, Secure Remote Lock and Mobile Widget are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

831SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 831SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.975 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
<http://www.arib-empf.org/initiation/sar.html> (Japanese)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

Handset Parts	1-2
Parts & Functions	1-2
Charging Battery	1-4
Charging Battery (AC Charger)	1-4
Charging Battery (In-Car Charger)	1-5
Power On/Off	1-6
Handset Power On/Off	1-6
Display & Indicators	1-7
Display	1-7
Indicators	1-8
Accessing Functions	1-11
Main Menu	1-12
Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut	1-13
Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)	
.....	1-14
Standby Shortcuts	1-15
Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)	
.....	1-16

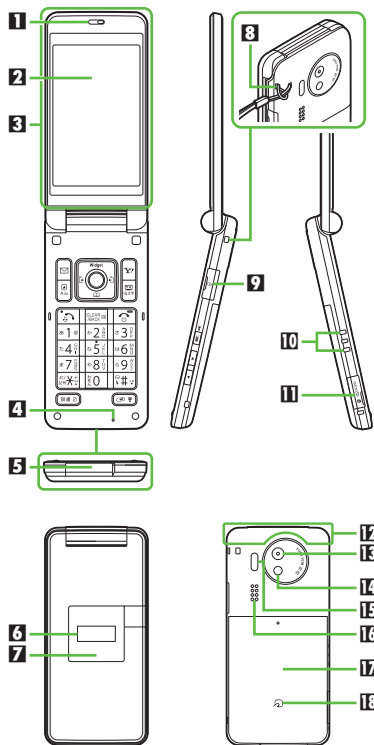
Mobile Manners	1-17
Security Codes	1-18
Basic Tools	1-19
My Details & Basic Tools	1-19
Double Number	1-21
Using Double Number	1-21
Modes	1-22
Additional Functions	1-24
Troubleshooting	1-27

1

Getting Started

1 Parts & Functions

Getting Started



- 1** Earpiece
- 2** Display
- 3** TV Antenna Location
- 4** Microphone
- 5** External Device Port (with Port Cover)
- 6** External Display
- 7** Small Light
- 8** Strap Eyelet
- 9** Headphone Port (with Port Cover)
- 10** Charging Terminals
- 11** Memory Card Slot (with Slot Cover)
- 12** Internal Antenna Location
- 13** External Camera (lens cover)
- 14** Mobile Light
- 15** Infrared Port
- 16** Speaker
- 17** Battery Cover
- 18** Logo

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port/Slot Cover after Port/Slot use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

Handset Positions

Handset Closed



Keep handset closed when not in use.

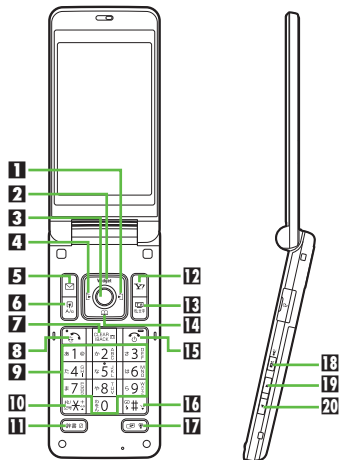
Handset Open



Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

Handset Keys

- Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.
- Change functions with **^** via Set Key Shortcut as needed.



- 1 Multi Selector (right)** Open Received Calls. Long Press to activate/cancel infrared¹.
- 2 Multi Selector (up)** Open Mobile Widget window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu¹.
- 3 Center Key** Open Main Menu. Long Press to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

- 4 Multi Selector (left)** Open Dialed Numbers. Long Press to activate/cancel IC Card Lock¹.
- 5 Mail Key** Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window¹.
- 6 Shortcuts & A/a Key** Open Shortcuts menu. Long Press to show active indicators (Status Icon List).
- 7 Clear/Back Key** Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.
- 8 Start Key** Open All Calls. Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.
- 9 Keypad** - Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.
- 10 * Key** Enter *, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to open S! Friend's Status member list.
- 11 Dictionary Key** Open Dictionary. Long Press to activate VeilView.
- 12 Yahoo! Keitai Key** Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to open Yahoo! Keitai menu¹.
- 16 TV & Text Key** Activate TV. Long Press to open Change Menu window.
- 14 Multi Selector (down)** Open Phone Book. Long Press to create new Phone Book entries¹.

- 15 Power On/Off Key** Toggle Standby display. Long Press to turn handset power off.
- 16 # Key** Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 17 Multi Job & Manner Key** Select handset mode. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

Side Keys

- 18 S! Circle Talk Key** **Open:** Open S! Circle Talk member list. Long Press to activate mobile camera. **Closed:** Toggle Clock view. Long Press to illuminate Mobile Light.
- 19 Volume Up Key** **Closed:** Scroll External Display indicators. Long Press to check e-money balance.
- 20 Volume Down Key** Long Press to start Simulated Call. **Closed:** Scroll External Display indicators.

Multi Selector & Side Keys

- In this guide, Multi Selector and Side Key operations are indicated as follows:

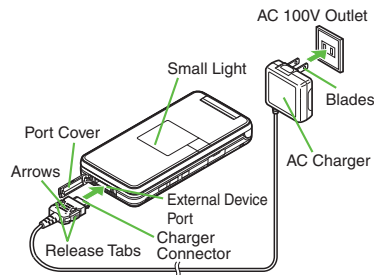
Press or	
Press or	
Press , , or	
Press or	

1 Getting Started Charging Battery (AC Charger)

Getting Started

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

- Use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only. In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- Handset and AC Charger may warm during charging.



Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

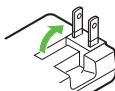
1 Open Port Cover as shown



2 Connect AC Charger

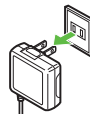
- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet



- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

4 Unplug AC Charger



- Pull AC Charger straight out.

5 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.

6 Fold back blades and replace Port Cover

When Small Light Flashes

- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

USB Charge

- Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

Charging Battery Overseas

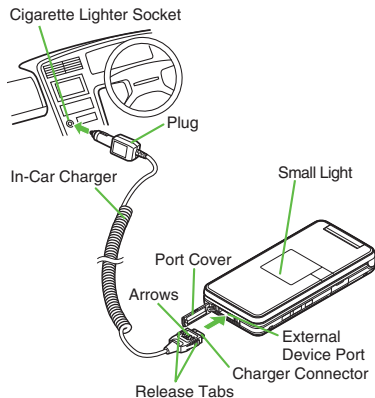
- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Advanced

- Disabling USB Charge (P.1-24)

Charging Battery (In-Car Charger)

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.



1 Open Port Cover as shown



2 Connect In-Car Charger

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

4 Start car engine

- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

5 Unplug Charger

6 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.

7 Replace Port Cover

Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes

- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.

1 Handset Power On/Off

Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 831SH for the first time:

1 (Long)

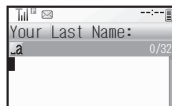
- After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.



Change Menu window opens

2 Select option

Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.



- My Details setup starts.

3 Enter last name

Enter first name

- Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

4 Yes or No



Standby

- Choose **No** to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

When USIM Card is Not Installed

- **Insert USIM Card** appears; insert the card to use handset.

Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when , or is pressed for the first time.



Follow these steps to retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock:

1 Yes

2

Power Off

1 (Long)

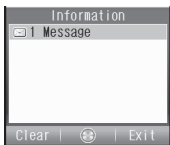
- After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Display

Standby



- Indicators (signal strength, battery strength, etc.) appear.
- Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.

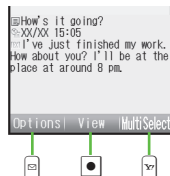


Information Window

- Information label (e.g., **Message**, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press to open it.

Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to , and appear at the bottom.



Display Saving

- Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key to activate it.

Backlight




- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press - to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).

Advanced

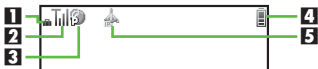
- Handling Information list (P.1-24)









Indicators

Display Indicators

,  and  indicate line type in Dual Mode (P.1-21).

Basic Status





1		International roaming in progress
2		Signal strength ¹
3		Packet transmission protocol ready (3G)
		Packet transmission protocol ready (GSM)
		Packet transmission available (3G)
		Packet transmission available (GSM)
4		Battery strength (% ² appears in turn)
5		IP Service enabled ³

¹The more bars the better.









²Battery strength % is an approximation.

³Appears when Decoration Call, S! Appli communication or Mobile Widget is enabled.

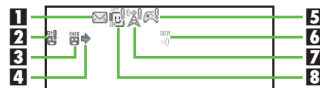
 accompanies  even if packet transmission is not in progress. Both indicators disappear when Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting are **Off**.













Function Status



1		Active S! Application
		Paused S! Application
		Music playback in progress
		TV recording in progress
2		Memory Card in use
		Memory Card formatting
		TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
		Multiple functions (Multi Job) active




Notifications



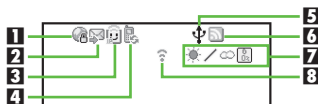
1		Unread mail
		Unread Delivery Report
2		Answer Phone active & message recorded
		Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3		New Voicemail
4		Missed Call or new mail on idle line
5		S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
6		Contents Key received
7		Unread S! Information Channel info
		Software Update result
8		Unread S! Quick News info
		Unread S! Friend's Status notification or unanswered registration request

Warnings



1		Mail memory low
2		Message delivery failure
3		Memory Card unusable/misinserted

■ Transmissions

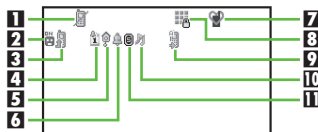


	SSL browsing in progress ¹
1	Waiting packet transmission (3G)
	Waiting packet transmission (GSM)
2	Receiving mail
	Sending mail
3	S! Friend's Status online
	Positioning in progress ²
4	Software Update in progress
	USB Cable connected
	USB transmission in progress
	Infrared transmission in progress
5	Infrared file transfer in progress
	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
	PC Site Browser in use
6	RSS-compatible site
7	Weather Indicator
8	Infrared transmission ready

¹Hidden while Mobile Widget is in use.

²Flashes while positioning.

■ Settings



1	Offline Mode active
2	Answer Phone active
3	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: Always) [*]
4	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
5	Hour Minder active
6	Alarm set
	Wakeup TV set
	Manner mode active
7	Drive mode active
	Original mode active
	VeilView active
8	Keypad Lock active
	IC Card Lock active
9	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active

	Ringtone (Silent)
10	Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
	Vibration active
11	Show Secret Data active
	Function Lock active

^{*}Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

External Display Indicators

Basic Status



1		Signal strength ¹
2		Battery strength ²

¹The more bars the better.

²Battery strength % is an approximation.

Notifications



1		Missed Calls
2		Answer Phone message recorded
3		Missed Call Notification
4		New Voicemail
5		New mail
6		New Delivery Report
7		Contents Key received
8		Unread S! Information Channel info
9		Weather Indicator update
10		Weather Indicator

Warnings



1		Message delivery failure
2		S! Information Channel info reception failure
3		Decoraction Call transmission failure
4		IP Service connection failure
5		Weather Indicator update failure

Handset Status



1		Alarm
2		Schedule Alarm
3		Task Alarm
4		S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
5		Unread S! Friend's Status notification
6		TV Alarm (watch)
7		TV Alarm (record)

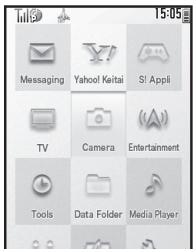
External Display Date & Time

- Press to toggle Clock view.

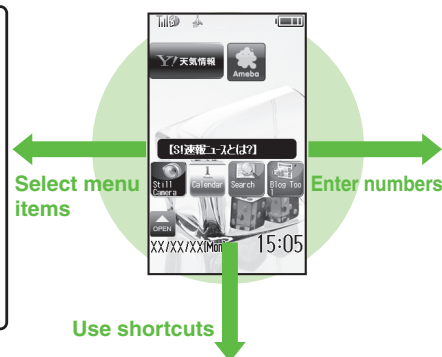
Accessing Functions

Use the following methods as needed.

Main Menu



Repeat menu item selection.

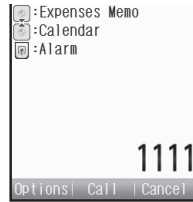


Select menu items

Enter numbers


Use shortcuts

Quick Operations



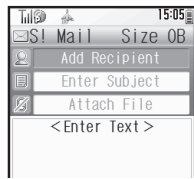
**Enter numbers to access functions.
To activate functions, press the corresponding key.**




■ Shortcuts




Access assigned functions (changeable).

■ Key Shortcut



Long Press , , or  to access assigned functions (changeable).

■ Standby Shortcuts



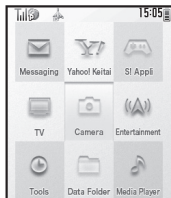
Save functions to Standby.

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active, then toggle function windows as needed.

Main Menu

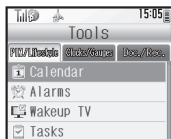
Menu Item Selection



1 




- Main Menu opens.

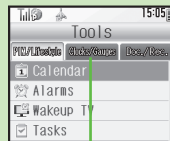
2 Use  to select menu item



- Menu/window opens.
- If Sub Menu opens, use  to select an item and press .


Tabs

- Menus/lists in a single window appear in separate tabs; use  to toggle tabs.




Tab

Reverse Navigation

- Press . If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Returning to Standby

- Press . If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Simple Menu

- Simplify menus and enlarge fonts; ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.

Main Menu Items

Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Yahoo! Keitai	Browse the Internet
S! Appli	Use S! Applications including games
TV	Watch/record TV programs
Camera	Capture images or record video
Entertainment	Read e-Books, receive news updates, etc.
Tools	Manage schedules, set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc.
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
Media Player	Play/download media files
Communication	Communicate with other users in various ways
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.

Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut

Shortcuts Menu

Access assigned functions via Shortcuts menu.

1 








Shortcuts Menu





2 **Select function** 

- Menu/window opens.




Changing Default Shortcuts







- In 2, select numbered function 
 - Assign Function  Select menu item  Select new item 
 - To assign menu items, select one and press .

Assigning Files & Folders


- In 2, select numbered function 
 - Assign Data  Select file/folder 
 - For folders, select **Set this folder** and press .

Key Shortcut

In Standby, Long Press ,  or  to access assigned functions.

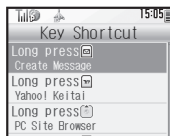
	Open S! Mail Composition window
	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu
	Open PC Site Browser menu
	Create new Phone Book entries
	Activate/cancel IC Card Lock
	Activate/cancel Infrared

Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to .

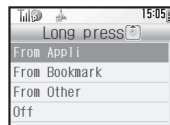
1   **Settings** 

2 **In Phone menu, Set Key Shortcut** 



Key Shortcut Menu

3 **Long press**  




4 **From Appli** 



5 **Tools**   **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calculator** 

Bookmark


In 4, **From Bookmark**  

- Select title   **Yes** 

Infrared or Show Secret Data On/Off

In 4, **From Other**   **Select item** 

Canceling Assigned Function

In 4, **Off** 

Advanced

 Changing item order  Restoring default shortcuts (P.1-24)

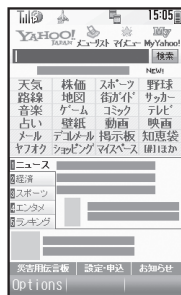
1 Getting Started

1 Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)

Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

While browsing the Internet



① Open Scratch Pad

② Toggle windows

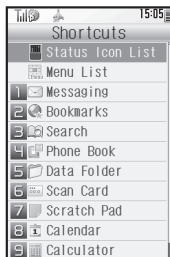


Jot down information

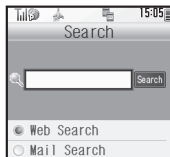
Multi Job may not activate from some menus/windows (e.g., ringtone/ringvideo selection, etc.).

Using Multi Job

① In a function window, In text entry/dial windows, Long Press .

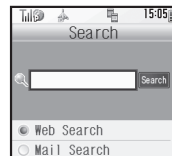
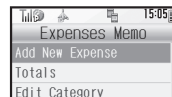


② Select function



• Menu/window opens.

③ To toggle active windows,

















④ Multi Job ends

• If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Standby Shortcuts

Paste shortcuts to functions, files, folders, etc. to Standby for easy access.

Saving Shortcuts to Standby

- 
 - Pointer (🖱️) appears.
-  Use **OPEN (OPEN)**

 - Press  to toggle selection.
 - Alternatively, use  to point to  (OPEN) and press .
- 
 - Press  to toggle selection.
 - Alternatively, use  to point to  (OPEN) and press .
-  **Select item** 
 - Corresponding icon appears in Standby.
 - >> appears when more items are available.












5 Use to specify target location










Saving from Menu/Window

- In Options menu, select **Set as StbyShortcut** (may not appear for some items); select sheet as needed.

Removing Shortcuts from Standby

-  Use  to select icon   **Operation**   **Remove**   **Yes** 





Moving Icons

-  Use  to select icon   **Operation**   **Change Layout**   **Specify target location** 

Moving Icons to Front/Back

-  Use  to select icon   **Operation**   **To Front or To Back** 

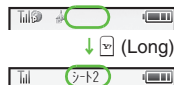
Using Shortcuts



-   Use  to select icon 
 - Menu/window opens or command is executed.

3 Toggling Sheets

Toggle sheets to use Standby shortcuts and widgets pasted on each sheet.

-    **(Long)**



- To toggle further, Long Press  or press  repeatedly.
- Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
- Save Standby shortcuts as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

Using Locked Sheets

-   **Select**   **Enter Handset Code** 

Advanced

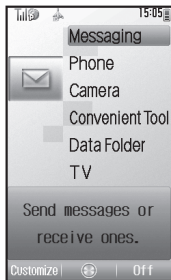
-   Reversing icon selection order with 
-  Editing sheet names
-  Locking sheets (P.1-24)

1 Using Simplified Menu (Simple Menu)

Getting Started

Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

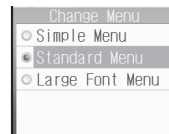
Menu Items

Messaging	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
Phone	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call VM, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail
Camera	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Scan Barcode, Scan Card, Scan Text, Review, Camera Settings, Video Settings
Convenient Tool	Calendar, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number, Change Menu
Data Folder	-
TV	-

Key assignments are largely the same as in Standard Menu.

Activating Simple Menu

1 (Long)



2 *Simple Menu* →

While Using an Incompatible Function

- End the function before activating Simple Menu.

Canceling Simple Menu

(Long) → *Standard Menu* →

Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

1 (Long)




- Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 831SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.

Canceling Manner Mode

 (Long)

Offline Mode

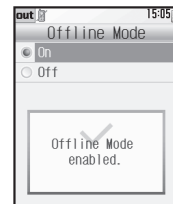
Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1 **Settings**

Network



2 **Offline Mode**

3 **On**



- Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode

In  **Off** 

Advanced

-   Changing handset modes  Creating a custom mode  Resetting Mode Settings (P.1-25)

Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.

- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code	9999 by default; use or change some functions
Center Access Code	4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details
Network Password*	4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring)

*Change as needed.

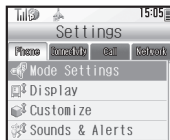
Incorrect Code Entry

- **Handset code is incorrect!** appears; try again.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Changing Handset Code

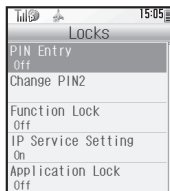
Enter four to eight digits for new Handset Code.

1 → **Settings** →



Phone Menu

2 **Locks** →



3 **Chg. Handset Code** →



4 **Enter current Handset Code**



5 **Enter new Handset Code** →

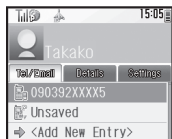


6 **Re-enter new Handset Code**



My Details & Basic Tools

My Number



- Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

Editing My Details

After 1, (select tab) Select item Select item Edit

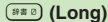
VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.



1 (Long)

Canceling VeilView



Keypad Lock

Lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.



- Keypad Lock activates.
- does not turn off handset power.

Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

- Keypad Lock is temporarily canceled; press to answer calls. Keypad Lock reactivates after the call.

Canceling Keypad Lock



Pen Light



- Mobile Light illuminates.



Important Pen Light Usage Note

- Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.

Battery Meter



- Approximate battery strength appears.

Changing Battery Strength Indicator Pattern

After 2, Select pattern

- Remaining time is approximated for current handset usage pattern.

Phone Help

Access this handy guide to handset settings and key functions/shortcuts.



- For *Indicators*, select category and press .

Advanced



- Clearing My Details
- Toggling My Details in Dual Mode
- Changing battery strength indicator pattern
- Changing VeilView pattern/density (P.1-25)

Indicator Descriptions

Check active indicators and their descriptions. (Status Icon List)

1 (Long)



- Active indicators are enlarged; description for selected indicator appears.
- Use  to select indicators to view their descriptions.
- Press  to open menu/window (e.g., Battery Meter window from battery strength indicator). May be unavailable for some indicators.

S! Town (Japanese)

Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can play games and meet other users.

- To use S! Town, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.


1  ➔ **Communication** ➔ 2 **S! Town** ➔ 

- S! Town (S! Application) starts.
- Refer to the S! Town help menu for operational instructions.
- If an upgrade notice appears, follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

S! Town Library

- Downloaded S! Town-compatible S! Applications are saved to S! Town Library. To start an application in S! Town Library, follow these steps:

 ➔ **Communication** ➔ 

S! Town ➔  ➔ **Select application**

➔ 

S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Loop is an online communication service. Share your diary, join BBS, etc. Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1  ➔ **Communication** ➔ 2 **S! Loop** ➔ 

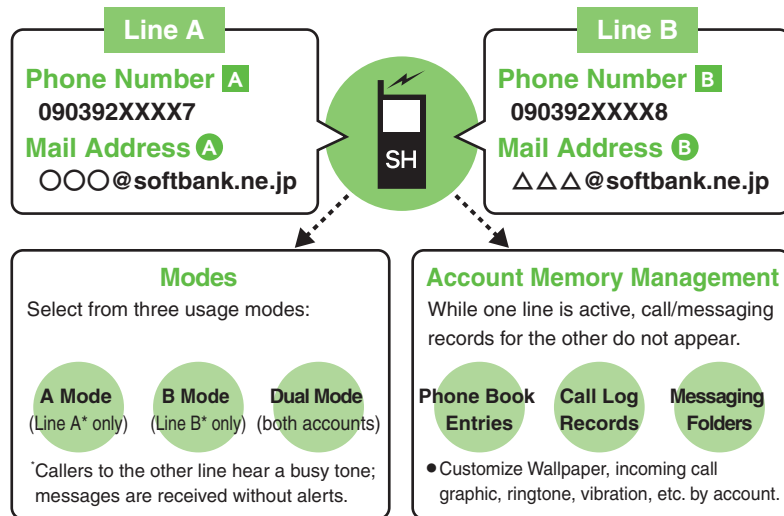
- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.

- Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- While abroad, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.
- For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-22).

Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses



Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

- 1 → **Settings** →
- 2 In Phone menu, **Double Number** →
- 3 **Switch On/Off** →
- 4 **On** →
- 5 **Enter Handset Code** →
→ **Yes** →

Canceling Double Number

- In 4, **Off** → → 5
- When Double Number is canceled:
 - Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A.
 - Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
 - Double Number account is not affected.

Modes

Activate **A Mode** to use Line A only, **B Mode** to use Line B only, or **Dual Mode** to use both accounts.

A Mode

Receive Calls to Line A Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line A.

A Mode & B Mode Precautions

- Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
- When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

B Mode

Receive Calls to Line B Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line B.

B Mode Restrictions

- Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
- S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call are unavailable.

Advanced

- Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes
- Renaming Double Number modes
- Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line
- Hiding Internet connection confirmation (P.1-26)

Dual Mode

Receive Calls to Both Accounts

- Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.

Phone Book Entries

Specify A, B or Dual.

Messaging


Select Line A or Line B.
Sender Address changes accordingly.

Calling






Select Line A or Line B.
Caller ID changes accordingly.

-  **B** and  indicate line type in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.

Switching Modes

-  (Long)
- Enter Handset Code ➔ 
- Select mode ➔ 
 - For *B Mode* confirmation appears.
- Yes ➔ 

Saving Modes to Phone Book Entries

-  ➔ *Phone* ➔  ➔ *Add New Entry* ➔ 
- Mode:* ➔  ➔ *Select mode* ➔ 

Entries Saved with Double Number Off

- Dual* is set automatically.

Advanced

-   Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode
-  Setting main line for Dual Mode (P.1-26)

USB Charge

Disabling USB Charge: [OK] → Settings → [OK] → Connectivity → USB Charge → [OK] → Disable → [OK]

Information

Handling Information list: [Start Here] [OK] → Phone → [OK] → See below

Opening List Manually Information → [OK]

Clearing List Information → [OK] → [OK] → Yes → [OK]

Shortcuts

Changing item order: [OK] → Select numbered function → [OK] → Move → [OK] → Select target location → [OK]

Restoring default shortcuts: [OK] → Select numbered function → [OK] → Set to Default → [OK] → Yes → [OK]

Standby Shortcut (Sheets)

Reversing icon selection order with [F5]: [OK] → [OK] → Move Focus(Reverse) → [OK]

- To cancel, select *Move Focus(Order)*.

Editing sheet names: [Start Here] [OK] → [OK] → Sheet Settings → [OK] → Change Sheet Name → [OK] → See below

Renaming: Select sheet → [OK] → Enter name → [OK]

Resetting All Sheet Names: [OK] → Yes → [OK]

Locking sheets: [Start Here] [OK] → [OK] → Sheet Settings → [OK] → Set Sheet Lock → [OK] → Enter Handset Code → [OK] → See below

Activating Lock: Select sheet → [OK] → On → [OK]

Changing Method for Temporary Access: Unlock Method → [OK] → No Password → [OK]

- Press [OK], then select [OK] and press [OK] to unlock sheet temporarily.

Mode	
Changing handset modes	<p>Start Here [Start Here] → Settings → [Settings] → In Phone menu, Mode Settings → [Mode Settings] → See below</p> <p>Selecting a Handset Mode</p> <p>Select mode → [Select mode]</p>
	<p>Customizing Handset Modes</p> <p>Select mode → [Select mode] → Select item → [Select item] → Adjust settings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not available for Normal mode.
	<p>[Settings] → Settings → [Settings] → In Phone menu, Mode Settings → [Mode Settings] → Original → [Original] → Select item → [Select item] → Adjust settings</p>
Creating a custom mode	<p>[Settings] → Settings → [Settings] → In Phone menu, Mode Settings → [Mode Settings] → Original → [Original] → Select item → [Select item] → Adjust settings</p>
Resetting Mode Settings	<p>[Settings] → Settings → [Settings] → In Phone menu, Mode Settings → [Mode Settings] → Select mode → [Select mode] → Enter Handset Code → [Enter Handset Code] → Yes → [Yes]</p>
My Details	
Clearing My Details	<p>[Settings] → [Settings] → [Settings] → Reset My Details → [Reset My Details] → Yes → [Yes]</p>
Toggling My Details in Dual Mode	<p>[Settings] → [Settings] → [Settings] → Switch to B or Switch to A → [Switch to B/A]</p>

Battery Meter

Changing battery strength indicator pattern	<p>[Settings] → Settings → [Settings] → In Phone menu, Display → [Display] → Mini Battery → [Mini Battery] → Select pattern → [Select pattern]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For patterns other than Clock & Battery, indicators appear in turn. To change interval, press [Interval]. For Battery level (or Level), approximate battery strength appears as a percentage. Remaining time is approximated for current handset usage pattern. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remaining time is hidden while charging.

VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density	<p>Start Here [Start Here] → Settings → [Settings] → In Phone menu, Display → [Display] → VeilView → [VeilView] → See below</p>
	<p>Pattern</p> <p>Pattern Setting → [Pattern Setting] → Select pattern → [Select pattern]</p>
	<p>Pattern Scale</p> <p>Scale Setting → [Scale Setting] → Select scale or Animation → [Animation]</p>
	<p>Pattern Color</p> <p>Color Setting → [Color Setting] → Select color → [Select color]</p>
	<p>Density</p> <p>Density Setting → [Density Setting] → Adjust density → [Adjust density]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Density:2 or Density:3, use [Density] before pressing [Adjust density] to adjust the pattern appearance for straight view.

Double Number

■ All Modes

Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes	[] → <i>Settings</i> → [] → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → [] → <i>Password Entry</i> → [] → <i>Off</i> → [] → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → []
Renaming Double Number modes	[] → <i>Settings</i> → [] → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → [] → <i>Mode Name</i> → [] → <i>Select mode</i> → [] → <i>Enter name</i> → [] → <i>Select icon</i> → []

■ A Mode & B Mode

Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line	[] → <i>Settings</i> → [] → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → [] → <i>Show Missed</i> → [] → <i>On</i> → []
Hiding Internet connection confirmation	[] → <i>Settings</i> → [] → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → [] → <i>Packet Warning</i> → [] → <i>Off</i> → [] • Available for B Mode.

■ Dual Mode

Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode	[] → <i>Settings</i> → [] → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → [] → <i>Reject By Line</i> → [] → <i>Select line</i> → [] → <i>On</i> → []
Setting main line for Dual Mode	[] → <i>Settings</i> → [] → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → [] → <i>Send Priority</i> → [] → <i>Select option</i> → []

Battery Meter

? --- appears

- Calculating time; not a malfunction.

? 100% does not appear

- This is by design; not a malfunction.

? Battery runs out faster

- A low ambient temperature reduces battery time.
- An older battery may run out faster.

? Remaining time changes suddenly

- Time estimated by handset status; estimate may take time to appear.

Font Size	2-2
Changing Font Size	2-2
Wallpaper	2-3
Customized Screen & S! Familiar	
Usability	2-4
Customized Screen & S! Familiar	
Usability (Japanese)	2-4
Sounds & Alerts	2-5
Customizing Handset Responses ...	2-5
Text Entry	2-6
Entering Characters	2-7
Editing Characters	2-10

User Dictionary	2-11
Saving Frequently Used Words	2-11
Dictionary	2-12
Using Dictionaries	2-12
Search	2-14
Searching Text	2-14
Scratch Pad	2-15
Phone Book	2-16
Creating Phone Book Entries	2-16
Using Phone Book Entries	2-18
Additional Functions	2-19
Troubleshooting	2-24

2

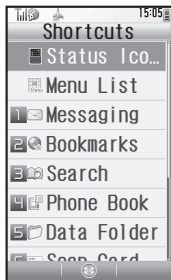
Basic Operations



Changing Font Size

Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:



1 (Long)



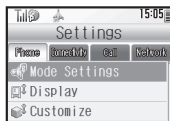
2 **Large Font Menu**

Canceling Large Font Menu

In 2, **Standard Menu**

Customizing Font Sizes

1 **Settings**



2 In Phone menu, **Display**

3 **Font Settings**



Font Settings Menu

4 **Font Size** **Select item**

5 **Select size**

Changing Font Weight

1 In Font Settings menu, **Font Weight**



2 **Select weight**



Wallpaper

1 → **Settings** → → In Phone menu, **Display** →

2 **Wallpaper** →



Wallpaper Menu

3 **Select folder** →

4 **Select image** →

- Some files may not be usable.
- Omit the next step when **Preset Pictures** is selected in ③.

5

Selecting Images Smaller or Larger than Display

After ④, select option → →

- For **Centered**, use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.

Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:

Yes → →

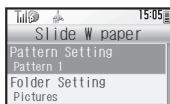
If Double Number Mode Menu Opens

Select mode →

Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby.
Some images may not appear.

1 In Wallpaper menu, **Slide W paper** →



2 **Folder Setting** →

3 **Pictures or DCIM** →

4 **Select sub folder** → → **Set this folder** →

- Omit steps for sub folder if none.

If There is No Image in Set Folder

- Preset images appear.

Using Preset Images

In ③, **Preset Pictures** →

Changing Pattern







In ②, **Pattern Setting** → → **Select pattern** →

- To check patterns, select one and press .





Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)

Preset Customized Screens

- 1  → 
- 2 **Customized Screen** → 
- 3 **Preset Screens** → 
- 4 **Select pattern** → 
- 5 

When Selected Customized Screen is Active

- Cancellation confirmation appears after . To cancel, choose **Yes** and press .

Downloading Customized Screens

Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

- 1  → **Data Folder** →  → **Customized Screen** → 






Customized Screen Menu




- 2 **Download Customized Screen** → 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Customized Screen Setup


- 1 **In Customized Screen menu, select Customized Screen** → 
- 2  → 

Applying Fee-based Customized Screen

- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:
After  →  → **Yes** → 
- Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.



S! Familiar Usability

Download and install Customized Screens that load legacy model interfaces.

- 1 **In Customized Screen menu, S! Familiar Usability** → 
- Follow onscreen instructions.

S! Familiar Usability Setup

- Follow these steps to install downloaded S! Familiar Usability (if not installed immediately after download):

[Customized Screen Menu] Select Customized Screen for S! Familiar Usability →  → 

Canceling Temporarily

 →  → **通常メニュー** → 

Advanced

-   Canceling Customized Screen
-  Canceling S! Familiar Usability
-  Canceling Customized Screen or S! Familiar Usability unconditionally
-  Deleting Customized Screens
-  Accessing Customized Screen Source Sites (P.2-19)



Customizing Handset Responses

Ringtone

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ In **Phone** menu, **Sounds & Alerts** ➔



Sounds & Alerts Menu

- 2 **Ringtone/videos** ➔
- 3 **Select item** ➔

For **For New Message**, etc., select **Assign Tone** and press .



- 4 **Select folder** ➔
- 5 **Select tone/file** ➔

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.
 After , **Duration** ➔ ➔ Enter time ➔

Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions
 In , **Videos** ➔ ➔ Select file ➔

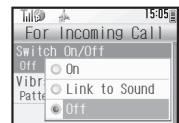
If Portion of File Content is Specifiable
 • After , start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:
Select start point ➔

Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period
 • A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.

When using Double Number in Dual Mode
 • When ringtones are customizable for each line, press in Ringtone/videos menu to switch lines.

Vibration

- 1 In **Sounds & Alerts** menu, **Vibration** ➔
- 2 **Select item** ➔ ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔



- 3 **On** ➔
- 4 **Vibration Pattern** ➔
 - To check vibration patterns, select one and press .
- 5 **Select pattern** ➔

Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration

In , **Link to Sound** ➔

Precaution

- Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.



Text Entry

Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows.



Text Entry Window (Message Text)

Opening Help

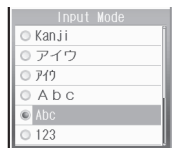


Note

- Pressing repeatedly may not close text entry windows.

Switching Entry Modes

1



- Available entry modes appear.

2 **Select mode**

- Entry Mode Indicators:

	Kanji (hiragana)
	Double/single-byte katakana
	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte number
	Character Code

appears when Predictive is active.

Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press three times.



- Press to toggle options in reverse. To type characters assigned to the same key, press first.

Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.



- Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.



Advanced

- Using Character Codes
- Using Pager Code (P.2-19)

Entering Characters

Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter **すずぎ** in kanji (hiragana) mode:



2 (No Conv)

Kanji

Convert **すずぎ** to **鈴木**.

1 Type **すずぎ**



- In kanji (hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana is typed. (Predictive)
- Press to toggle suggestion mode between Standard, Business, Male and Female. (Personal Mode)

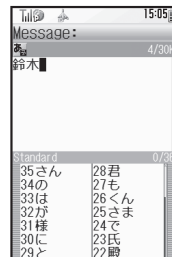
2



3 **鈴木**

- To exit suggestion list, press .

4



- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

When Target Word is Not Listed

- Press or to segment hiragana to convert separately.
 - Press to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.

Phonetic Conversion

Type reading in hiragana

Advanced

- Inserting line breaks
- Inserting spaces
- Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list
- Clearing entry log
- Changing Font Size
- Disabling suggestions based on entered characters
- Disabling suggestions based on entered words
- Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words
- Lowering type priorities in suggestion list
- Selecting a suggestion mode (P.2-19 - 2-20)



One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: **すずき** was previously converted to **鈴木**.

1 **す** (す) →

2 **Select word/phrase** →

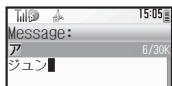
Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to double-byte katakana mode and enter **ジュン**.

1 → **アイウ** →



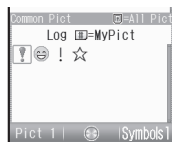
2 **シ** → (シ) → (ジ) → (ユ) → (ジュン) →



Pictograms & Symbols

May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1



- Pictogram/Symbol Log appears.

2 or → **List toggles**



- In Pictogram List, press to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.

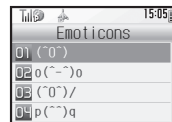
3 **Select Pictogram or Symbol** →

- Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.

4 → **List closes**

Emoticons

1 → **Emoticons** →



2 **Select emoticon** →

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

- In kanji (hiragana) mode, type **かお** or a descriptive word such as **わーい** or **うーん**, then convert the entry.

EmoticonWordLink

- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as **嬉しい** or **悲しい**, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.



Mail & Web Extensions

Enter **.co.jp**, **http://**, etc., easily.

1  → **Quick Address List** → 



2 **Select extension** → 

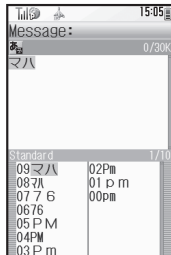
- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

Hiragana to Katakana/
Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter **PM**
Use key inscriptions.

1 




2 **Select word/phrase (PM)** → 

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.


Example: To enter **終電**

1 



2 **Select word/phrase (終電)** → 

One Hiragana Word Call

- Type the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press .

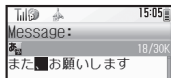


Editing Characters

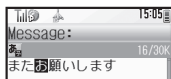
Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また、お願
いし
ます** to **また明日お願いします**.

1 Select character



2



- The highlighted character is deleted.

3

Select target location → Enter characters



Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press once for each character after deletion.

Deleting All Text

- Long Press at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press .

Jumping to the End or Top of Text

- *Cursor Position* → → *Jump to End or Jump to Top* →

Copy/Cut & Paste

1

- *Cut or Copy* → →
- Select first character* →



Cut

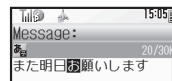
- To cancel and start over, press .

2

- Highlight text range* →

3

- Select target location* →
- (Long)



- Text is entered.

Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text

- Select target location* → → *Paste*
- → *Select text* →
- Available when Paste List appears.

Advanced

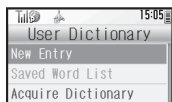
- Undo conversion or recover deleted characters
- Inserting Phone Book entry items (P.2-19)

Saving Frequently Used Words

Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.

- 1 **Settings** → **User Dictionary**



User Dictionary Menu

- 2 **New Entry** → **Enter word**
- 3 **Enter reading**

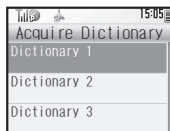
Editing Entries

- In **Saved Word List**
- Select word → **Edit**
 - Edit reading → **Yes**

831SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Download specialized 831SH Download Dictionaries from SH-web Mobile Internet site. Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions. Some dictionary files may not be usable.

- 1 In **User Dictionary menu**, **Acquire Dictionary**



- 2 **Select number** → **Select dictionary**
 - Existing dictionary is replaced.

Canceling Dictionary

- In **select dictionary** → **Cancel**

Viewing Dictionary Information

- In **select dictionary** → **Info**

Advanced

- Deleting entries (P.2-20)



Using Dictionaries

2

Basic Operations

Available Dictionaries:

Preloaded Dictionaries*	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary
Online Dictionaries	Wikipedia, Meikyo J-Dic MX.net, Genius EJ-Dic MX.net, Genius JE-Dic MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary, Hot Pepper Pockets, Amazon.co.jp

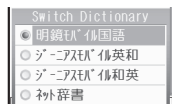
*Download and add dictionaries as needed.

Online Dictionaries

- Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
- Update dictionary list for most recent versions.

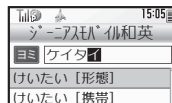
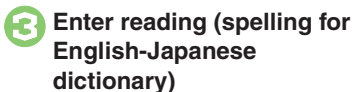
Using Preloaded Dictionaries

Searching As-You-Type



Dictionary Window

- Last used dictionary appears first.



- Enter reading in katakana.
- Search results appear as you type.



Definition/Translation Window

Looking Up in Online Dictionaries

[Definition/Translation Window]

WebDict.Search

- Perform from ② (except ④) in "Using Online Dictionaries" on P.2-13; read bulleted sentence in ① beforehand.

Searching by Keyword



Advanced

- Changing Font Size
- Looking up copied words in dictionaries
- Viewing dictionary information
- Deleting History & bookmarks
- Updating dictionary list (P.2-20)



Copying Text

■ Index Word Only

- 1 In definition/translation window,
- 2 *Copy Index Word* →

■ Selected Portions

- 1 In definition/translation window,
- 2 *Copy* → → Select first character → → Highlight text range →

Using History & Bookmarks

■ Saving Bookmarks

- 1 In definition/translation window,
- 2 *Bookmark* →

■ Opening History or Bookmarks

- 1 In Dictionary window,
- 2 *History or Bookmark List* →
- 3 Select word, etc. →
 - Definition/translation window opens.

Adding Downloaded Dictionary

- 1 In Dictionary window,
- 2 *Add Dictionary* →
- 3 Select file →

Canceling Added Dictionary

In 2, *Cancel Dictionary* → → Yes →

Using Online Dictionaries

- 1 In Dictionary window, → *外辞書* →
 - Terms of service (Japanese) appear when using online dictionary for the first time. Read and then press .
- 2 Select pull-down menu →
- 3 Select dictionary →
 - Select *すべて* to look up in all dictionaries at once.
- 4 Select entry field → → Enter text →

5 *Search* → 6 *Yes* →

7 Select word, etc. →

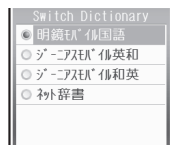
- Definition/translation window opens.

Disabling Confirmation

After 5, (/✓) → From 5

Using Dictionaries during Text Entry

- 1 Type text → Before pressing to complete entry,



2 Select dictionary →

3 *Search* → → Select word, etc. →

- Definition/translation window opens.

Inserting Index Word into Text

After 3, → *Paste Index Word* →

Advanced

● Selecting dictionaries for use ● Selecting search method ● Selecting search area (P.2-20)



Searching Text

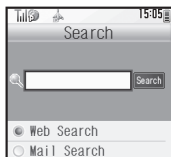
2

Basic Operations

Web Search

Transmission fees apply.

- 1 → **Tools** → →
- 2 **Search** →



Search Window

- **Web Search** is selected by default.

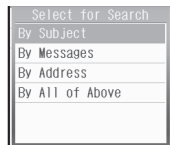
- 3 → →
 - 4 **Search** →
- Search results appear.

Searching within PC Sites

[Search Window] → **Change Browser**
 → **PC Site Browser** →

Mail Search

- 1 In Search window, **Mail Search** →
- 2 Select entry field → →
- 3 **Search** →



- 4 **Select option** →

Searching within Received or Sent Messages

[Search Window] → **Change Mail Folder** → → **Received Messages or Sent Messages** →



Scratch Pad

Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

1   **Tools**  
Doc./Rec.
























2 **Scratch Pad** 
• Text entry window opens.

3 **Enter text** 



4 **Save to Notepad** 
• Open saved entries from Notepad.

Other Scratch Pad Usage

Usage	Operation
Paste to Standby	Set as StbyShortcut   Select sheet  
Enter Mail Message Text	Create Message    Select mail type  
Enter Schedule Subject/Details	Save to Calendar 
Enter Task Subject/Details	Save to Tasks 
Add Last Name to Phone Book	Save to Phone Book  ■ Reading is not entered.
Save Text File	Save as Text File    Enter name    Save here  ■ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents).
Search Internet	Web Search    Select browser 

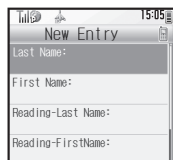
For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.



Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

1 → **Phone** → → **Add New Entry** →



2 **Last Name:** → → **Enter last name** → → **First Name:** → → **Enter first name** →



- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

3 **Add Phone Number:** → → **Enter phone number** → → **Select type** →



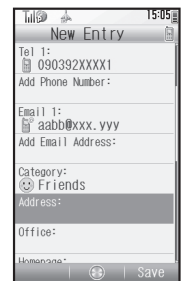
- To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

4 **Add Email Address:** → → **Enter mail address** → → **Select type** →



- To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

5 **Category:** → → **Select Category** →



Phone Book Entry Window

6 → **Entry is saved to Phone Book.**

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Selecting Mode in Dual Mode

[Phone Book Entry Window] Mode:

→ → **Select mode** →



Advanced

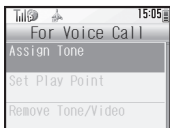
- Saving other information
- Changing vibration pattern
- Editing Phone Book entries
- Setting incoming mail ring time
- Renaming Categories
- Moving Categories (P.2-21 - 2-22)










Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.





- 1 In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., **Tone-Voice Call**:  



- 2 **Assign Tone**    Select folder  
- 3 Select tone/file  

Saving Secret Entries

Hide Phone Book entries to require Handset Code for access.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, **Secret**:  
- 2 **On**  

Accessing Secret Entries














-     **Unlock Temporarily**  
-  Enter Handset Code  

Customizing Response by Category

- 1   **Phone**   **Category Control**  

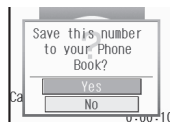


Category Control Menu

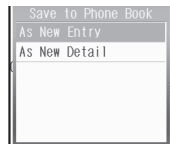
- 2 **Select Category**    **Select item**  
 - 3 **Select item**    **Select item, e.g., Assign Tone**    **Customize responses**  
 - Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
 - Not available for USIM Card.
- Responses Set by Phone Book Entry**
- Settings for each entry take priority.

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.











- 1 When confirmation appears, **Yes**  



- 2 **As New Entry**    **Complete other fields**  

Saving to an Existing Entry

- In 2, **As New Detail**    **Select entry**    **Complete other fields**  



Using Phone Book Entries

Dialing via Phone Book

- 1 Select katakana row



Entry Search Window (By あかさたな)

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, Line indicators appear.

- 2 Select entry



Entry Details

- 3 Select phone number

- 4

Placing Video Calls

After , **Video Call**

Advanced

- Changing view for entry search window
- Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions
- Messaging via Phone Book
- Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book
- Deleting Phone Book entries
- Checking memory status
- Copying Phone Book entries (And more on P.2-21 - 2-22)

Changing Search Method

- 1 In entry search window, **Ph.Book Settings**

- 2 **Sort Entries**



- 3 Select method

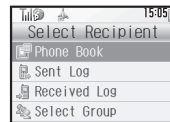
- Phone Book Search Methods:

By あかさたな	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

Changing Search Method Temporarily
[Entry Search Window] (press repeatedly to toggle search methods)

Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.



Select Recipient Window

- 1 **Phone Book**

- Entry search window opens.

- 2 Select entry

- 3 Select phone number or mail address



- Recipient is entered.
- Omit if only one number or address is saved.



Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability	
Canceling Customized Screen	<p>● → [OK] → Off → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Canceling S! Familiar Usability	<p>● → [Y] → S!おなじみ操作解除 → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Canceling Customized Screen or S! Familiar Usability unconditionally	<p>[M] → Menu List → ● → Settings → ● → In Phone menu, <i>Customize</i> → ● → Off → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Deleting Customized Screens	<p>● → Data Folder → ● → Customized Screen → ● → Select Customized Screen → [OK] → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the corresponding Contents Key has been downloaded, choose Yes or No and press [OK].
Accessing Customized Screen Source Sites	<p>● → Data Folder → ● → Customized Screen → ● → Select Customized Screen → [OK] → Web Access → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.

Text Entry

■ Entry & Edit

Using Character Codes	In a text entry window (Character Code mode), enter four digits
Using Pager Code	In a text entry window, [M] → Input/Conversion → ● → Input Method → ● → Pager Code → ● ● Return to text entry window and enter two digits.
Inserting line breaks	At the End of Text In a text entry window, [Q] Mid-Entry In a text entry window, [K] → [Y] → [Y] → ↵ → ●
Inserting spaces	In a text entry window, [C]
Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list	In a text entry window, [M] → Input/Conversion → ● → Select Candidate → ● → Enable 1-9, 0, *, # → ●
Clearing entry log	In a text entry window, [M] → Input/Conversion → ● → Reset Log → ● → Yes → ●
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	In a text entry window, [M] → Undo/Recover → ●
Inserting Phone Book entry items	In a text entry window, [M] → Insert/Font Size → ● → Phone Book → ● → Select entry → ● → Select item → ●
Changing Font Size	In a text entry window, [M] → Insert/Font Size → ● → Font Size → ● → Select size → ●



Conversion

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Predictive → → Off →
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Previous Usage → → Off →
Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → EmoticonWordLink → → Off →
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Set Low Priority → → Select type → →
Selecting a suggestion mode	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Personal Mode → → Select mode →

User Dictionary

Deleting entries	→ Settings → → In Phone menu, User Dictionary → → Saved Word List → → Select word → →
------------------	---

Dictionary

Preloaded & Online Dictionaries

Changing Font Size	→ → Font Size → → Select size →
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	After copying text, → By Copy Text or Search by CopiedText → → Search → → Select word →

Preloaded Dictionaries Only

Viewing dictionary information	→ → Information →
Deleting History & bookmarks	→ → History or Bookmark List → → See below
	One Word Select word → → Delete → → Yes →
	All Words → Delete All → → Enter Handset Code → → Yes →

Online Dictionaries Only

Updating dictionary list	→ → 初辞書 → → Update Dictionaries → → Yes →
Selecting dictionaries for use	→ → 初辞書 → → Edit Dict. List → → Select dictionary → → →
Selecting search method	→ → 初辞書 → → Set Search Method → → Select option →
Selecting search area	→ → 初辞書 → → Set Search Area → → Select area →




Phone Book

View Settings

Changing view for entry search window	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Phone → ☐ → Ph.Book Settings → ☐ → View Settings → ☐ → List Only → ☐
Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (Start Here) ☐ → Phone → ☐ → Add New Entry → ☐ ☐ → Picture: → ☐ → See below <p>Assigning Images</p> <p>Assign Picture → ☐ → Select image → ☐</p> <p>Capturing Images</p> <p>Take Picture → ☐ → Frame image on Display → ☐ → ☐</p>
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Phone → ☐ → Ph.Book Settings → ☐ → New Number Prompt → ☐ → Incoming Call or Outgoing Call → ☐ → Off → ☐

Phone Book Entry

Saving other information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (Start Here) ☐ → Phone → ☐ → Add New Entry → ☐ ☐ → See below <p>Address</p> <p>Address: → ☐ → Select item → ☐ → Complete field → ☐ → yr</p>
	<p>Office</p> <p>Office: → ☐ → Select item → ☐ → Enter text → ☐ → yr</p>
	<p>Homepage</p> <p>Homepage: → ☐ → Enter URL → ☐ → Select type → ☐</p>
	<p>Note</p> <p>Note: → ☐ → Enter text → ☐</p>
	<p>Birthday</p> <p>Birthday: → ☐ → Enter date → ☐</p>
Changing vibration pattern	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Phone → ☐ → Add New Entry → ☐ → Select item, e.g., Vibration-Message: → ☐ → Switch On/Off → ☐ → Select option → ☐ → Vibration Pattern → ☐ → Select pattern → ☐ → 
Editing Phone Book entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Select entry → ☐ → Edit → ☐ → Select item → ☐ → Edit → ☐ → yr • Edit Reading after editing names.
Setting incoming mail ring time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Select entry → ☐ → Edit → ☐ → Tone-New Message: → ☐ → Duration → ☐ → Enter time → ☐ → yr • Available for compatible ringtones.
Renaming Categories	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Phone → ☐ → Category Control → ☐ → Select Category → ☐ → Edit Name → ☐ → Enter name → ☐



Moving Categories	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Phone → ☐ → Category Control → ☐ → Select Category → ☐ → Select target location → ☐ • View for <i>By Category</i> Phone Book search changes accordingly.
■ Using Entries	
Messaging via Phone Book	<p>Start Here ☐ → Select entry → ☐ → See below</p> <p>Phone Numbers</p> <p>Select phone number → ☐ → Create Message → ☐ → S! Mail or SMS → ☐ → Complete message → ☐</p> <p>Mail Address</p> <p>Select address → ☐ → Complete message → ☐</p>
Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book	<p>☐ → Select entry → ☐ → Select phone number → ☐ → Deco. Call → ☐ → Deco. Call File → ☐ → Deco. Call Folder → ☐ → Select file → ☐ → Call Type → ☐ → Voice Call or Video Call → ☐ → ☐</p> <p>• When placing a Decoration Call for the first time, a confirmation appears.</p>
Initiating S! Circle Talk via Phone Book	<p>☐ → Select entry → ☐ → Select phone number → ☐ → Call S! Circle Talk → ☐ → ☐</p> <p>• Set My Status to <i>Online</i> first.</p>
Placing international calls via Phone Book	<p>☐ → Select entry → ☐ → Select phone number → ☐ → Int'l Call → ☐ → Select country → ☐ → ☐</p>

■ Manage Entries

Deleting Phone Book entries	<p>One Entry</p> <p>☐ → Select entry → ☐ → Delete → ☐ → Yes → ☐</p> <p>All Entries</p> <p>☐ → Phone → ☐ → Manage Entries → ☐ → Delete All → ☐ → Select entry type → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Enter Handset Code → ☐</p>
Checking memory status	<p>☐ → Phone → ☐ → Manage Entries → ☐ → Memory Status → ☐</p>
Copying Phone Book entries	<p>One Entry (Handset → USIM Card)</p> <p>☐ → Select entry → ☐ → Manage Entries → ☐ → Copy Entry to USIM → ☐ → Yes → ☐</p>
	<p>One Entry (USIM Card → Handset)</p> <p>☐ → ☐ → Ph.Book Settings → ☐ → Select Phone Book → ☐ → USIM Memory → ☐ → Select entry → ☐ → Manage Entries → ☐ → Copy Entry to Phone → ☐</p> <p>All Entries</p> <p>☐ → ☐ → Manage Entries → ☐ → Copy All → ☐ → Select method → ☐ → Yes → ☐</p> <p>• If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.</p>



Editing Categories on USIM Card	<input type="checkbox"/> Start Here <input type="checkbox"/> Phone <input type="checkbox"/> Category Control <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Change to USIM <input type="checkbox"/> See below
	Renaming Categories Select Category <input type="checkbox"/> Edit Name <input type="checkbox"/> Enter name <input type="checkbox"/>
	Moving Categories Select Category <input type="checkbox"/> Select target location <input type="checkbox"/>
	Changing Icons Select Category <input type="checkbox"/> Change Icon <input type="checkbox"/> Select Pictogram <input type="checkbox"/>
Changing default storage media for new entries	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone <input type="checkbox"/> Ph.Book Settings <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Save New Entry <input type="checkbox"/> USIM Memory or Ask Each Time <input type="checkbox"/>
Switching reference Phone Book	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone <input type="checkbox"/> Ph.Book Settings <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Select Phone Book <input type="checkbox"/> USIM Memory or Both <input type="checkbox"/>

■ Mode Settings

Activate Double Number first.

Changing modes of all entries at once	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone <input type="checkbox"/> Manage Entries <input type="checkbox"/> Change Mode(All) <input type="checkbox"/> Select mode <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Enter Handset Code <input type="checkbox"/>
Changing modes of multiple entries	<input type="checkbox"/> Manage Entries <input type="checkbox"/> Multiple Selection <input type="checkbox"/> Select entry <input type="checkbox"/> (✓/□) <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Change Mode <input type="checkbox"/> Select mode <input type="checkbox"/>
Changing modes of entries by Category	<input type="checkbox"/> Select Category <input type="checkbox"/> Manage Entries <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Change Mode(Category) <input type="checkbox"/> Select mode <input type="checkbox"/> Enter Handset Code <input type="checkbox"/> • Set search method to <i>By Category</i> first.



Customized Screen

? Customized Screen is not applied

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

Phone Book

? Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images do not appear for incoming Decoration Calls including image/video.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.

? Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Ringtones do not sound for incoming Decoration Calls with sound.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.

? Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.



Emergency Calls	3-2	Call Log	3-8
Voice Calling	3-3	Call Time & Call Cost	3-9
Video Calling	3-5	Optional Services	3-10
Decoration Call.....	3-6	Additional Functions	3-12
Speed Dial.....	3-7	Troubleshooting.....	3-21

3

Calling



Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets.

(Emergency Location Report)

831SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Location Information is not reported during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Max Cost	
Function Lock	Possible
Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode	
Keypad Lock	Restricted
PIN Entry	



Voice Calling

Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Voice Call Window

1 to accept the call

- Call connects.

2 ➔ Call ends

Muting Ringer Temporarily

When a call arrives,

Earpiece Volume

During a call, or

After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Placing a Voice Call

1 Enter phone number with area code

- To correct entry, use to place cursor under the digit and press . To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press .

2

- Wait for connection.



3 ➔ Call ends

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

After 1, ➔ Select Line(Voice) ➔

➔ Select line ➔

Placing an International Call

1 Enter phone number with area code ➔

2 Int'l Call ➔



3 Select country ➔ ➔

- Handset dials the number.

4 ➔ Call ends

Calling Unlisted Countries

In , Enter Code ➔ ➔ Enter

country code ➔ ➔

3

Calling

Advanced

- Rejecting calls
- Placing calls on hold
- Answering with Headphones (P.3-12)
- Adjusting Earpiece Volume
- Sending/blocking Caller ID (P.3-13)
- Muting Microphone
- Recording caller voice
- Opening messages (And more on P.3-14)
- Answering Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones (P.3-20)



Placing Calls while Abroad

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad.
Apply for Global Roaming beforehand.
http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/global_service/

1 Enter phone number with area code

2 Int'l Call → → 日本(JPN) →

- Handset dials the number.

3 → Call ends

Calling SoftBank Handsets

- In , always select 日本(JPN).

Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

- Perform steps in "Placing a Voice Call" on P.3-3.

Calls Overseas

- Calling may not be possible outside Japan. Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

1 (Long)

- Answer Phone is set (appears).

Canceling Answer Phone

(Long)

Answering Calls while Recording



- No message will be recorded.

Playing Messages

1

2 Select record →

- Playback stops automatically at the end of message.

Deleting All Records

After 1, → Delete All → → Enter Handset Code → → Yes →

Playback Operations

Volume Control	or
Replay/Skip Backward	
Stop	
Skip Forward	
Delete	→ Yes →
Loudspeaker On/Off	

Advanced

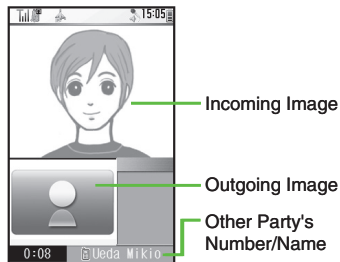
- Recording caller messages
- Changing ring time
- Sampling outgoing message
- Muting Earpiece (P.3-12)
- Placing calls by entering country code directly
- Adding a country code automatically when placing calls
- Adding/changing/deleting country codes (And more on P.3-13)



Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Handle Video Calls like Voice Calls. This page describes functions/operations unique to Video Call.

Window Description



Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

Advanced

- 👉 ● Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on P.3-12)
- Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness (P.3-14)
- Sending External Camera image when initiating Video Calls ● Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls ● Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on P.3-20)

Answering a Video Call

Incoming call window opens for a call.



Incoming Video Call Window

- 1 **to accept the call**
 - Alternative Image is sent. (Video Call charges apply to the caller.)
- 2 **Call ends**

Answering with External Camera Image
[Incoming Video Call Window]
No

Engaged Video Call Operations

Toggle View	
Toggle Outgoing Image	
Open Help	Help

Placing a Video Call

- 1 Enter phone number
- 2 **Video Call**



- Call is accepted and image appears.

- 3 **Call ends**

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

After 1, **Select Line(Video)**
Select line



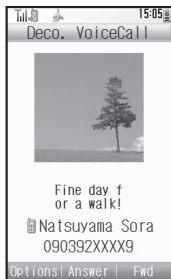
Decoration Call

Show decorative message in incoming call windows on recipient's handset.

- Available without a separate contract.
- Recipient's handset must be Decoration Call-compatible.
- Charges apply to the caller when Decoration Call is placed successfully.

Answering a Decoration Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Decoration Call Window

If Softkeys do not appear, handle incoming Decoration Call like any other call.

1 to accept the call

- Call connects.

2 Call ends

- Open/save Decoration Call files from received call records.

Note

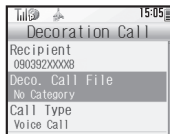
- Decoration Call file may not play depending on recipient handset settings.

Placing a Decoration Call

Follow these steps to place a Decoration Call by entering a phone number.

1 Enter phone number

➔ **Deco. Call**



2 **Deco. Call File**

3 **Deco. Call Folder** ➔ **Select file**

- To check selected file, press .

4

- Handset dials the number. (It may take some time.)

5 ➔ **Call ends**

Placing Your First Decoration Call

- A confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.
 - To show confirmation next time as well, press ().

Placing Decoration Video Calls

After , **Call Type** ➔ ➔ **Video Call** ➔ ➔ 4

Advanced

- Creating Decoration Call files
- Editing Decoration Call files
- Saving received Decoration Call files
- Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls
- Hiding incoming Decoration Call window
- Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files
- Showing options upon Decoration Call failure (P.3-15)

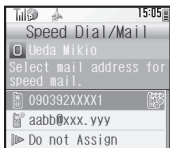


Speed Dial

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔
- 2 **Speed Dial/Mail** ➔
- 3 **Select number** ➔ ➔
 - Select katakana row** ➔
 - Select entry** ➔
- 4 **Select phone number** ➔



- Select mail address prompt appears. To save mail address for easy messaging, select one and press . (Omit .)

- 5 **Do not Assign** ➔

6 ➔ Saved

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat - .

Using Headphones for Speed Dial

- Save a phone number to .

Canceling Speed Dial Entries

- In , select entry ➔ ➔ **Remove Selected or Remove All** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔
- Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

Using Speed Dial

- 1 - (entry number)

- 2

Placing a Video Call

- In , ➔ **Speed Video** ➔

Placing Decoration Calls

- In , ➔ **Speed Deco. Call** ➔ ➔ **Deco. Call File** ➔ ➔ **Select/create file** ➔

Using Headphones

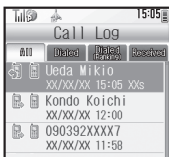
- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in . To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.




Call Log


Open recent dialed/received call records.

1 



- All Calls opens; press  to open Dialed Numbers, Dialed Ranking and then Received Calls.
- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, Line indicators appear except for Dialed Ranking.







2 **Select record**  

- Select Decoration Call record and press  to open the corresponding file.

When the Same Number is Dialed More than Once Using the Same Call Option

- Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call.)

Advanced

-   Dialing from records
-  Sending messages from records
-  Saving Phone Book entries from records
-  Placing Decoration Calls from records
-  Initiating S! Circle Talk from records (And more on P.3-16)



Call Time & Call Cost

Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1 → **Settings** → →

Call

2 **Call Time & Cost** →



Call Time & Cost Menu

3 **Call Timers** →



4 **Dialed Calls or Received Calls** →

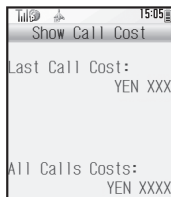
Call Cost

Check estimated call charges of the most recent call and all calls.

Call Costs (including Max Cost) may be unavailable depending on subscription status.

1 In **Call Time & Cost** menu,
Call Costs →

2 **Show Call Cost** →



Advanced

- Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls
- Showing Call Cost after each call
- Limiting Call Costs
- Checking packet transmission volume
- Resetting Data Counter (And more on **P.3-17**)



Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

Call Forwarding	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
Voicemail	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touchtone phones
Call Waiting*	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
Group Calling*	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls

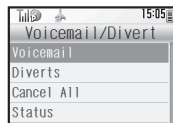
*A separate contract is required.

Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

1 **Settings** **Call**

2 **Voicemail/Divert**



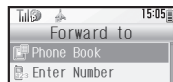
Voicemail/Divert Menu

3 **Diverts**



4 **Select call type**

5 **No Answer**



6 **Phone Book** **Select entry**

7 **Select phone number**

- Omit if only one number is saved.

8

9 **Select ring time**

Diverting Calls without Handset Response

In , **Always**

Entering Forwarding Number Directly
In , **Enter Number** **Enter phone number** **Select ring time**



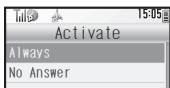
Advanced

Checking service status (P.3-18)

Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Voicemail** → → **Activate** →



- 2 **No Answer** → → **Select ring time** →

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In , **Always** →

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Call**



Call Menu

- 2 **Missed Calls** → →
- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, select a line and press .
 - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

- 1 In Call menu, **Voicemail/Divert** →



Voicemail/Divert Menu

- 2 **Voicemail** →
- 3 **Call Voicemail** →

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, select a line and press .
- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Deleting New Voicemail Message Indicator
In , **Delete Icon** → → **Yes** →

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Cancel All** →



- 2 **Yes** →

Advanced

- Activating Call Waiting ● Talking on multiple lines simultaneously ● Rejecting calls by number ● Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction ● Setting/canceling incoming call restriction (And more on P.3-18 - 3-19)



Receiving a Call

■ Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	Voice Call When a call arrives, → Reject →
	Video Call When a call arrives,
Placing calls on hold	When a call arrives, • Press to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	When a call arrives, Long Press Call Button • To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

■ Answer Phone

Recording caller messages	When a Voice Call arrives, → Record Message →
Changing ring time	→ Settings → → Call → Answer Phone → → Answer Time → → Enter time →
Sampling outgoing message	→ Settings → → Call → Answer Phone → → Outgoing Message → • Press to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	→ Settings → → Call → Answer Phone → → Volume → → Silent →


■ Remote Monitor (Video Call)

Answering Video Calls automatically	Start Here → → Settings → → Call → Video Call → → Remote Monitor → → Enter Handset Code → → See below
	Saving Numbers from Phone Book Auto Answer List → → <Empty> → → Change → → From Phone Book → → Select entry → → Select phone number → • To enter a phone number directly, select <Empty> and press .
	Saving Numbers from Call Log Auto Answer List → → <Empty> → → Change → → From Call Log → → Select record →
Editing Auto Answer List	Start Here → → Settings → → Call → Video Call → → Remote Monitor → → Enter Handset Code → → Auto Answer List → → See below
	Editing Numbers Select entry → → Edit →
Changing ring time	Deleting Entries Select entry → → Delete → → Yes →
	→ Settings → → Call → Video Call → → Remote Monitor → → Enter Handset Code → → Answer Time → → Enter time →








Placing a Call


Basic Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ • ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Earpiece Volume</i> ➔ • ➔ <i>Adjust level</i> ➔ •
Sending/blocking Caller ID	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> After phone number entry,  ➔ <i>Hide My ID</i> or <i>Show My ID</i> ➔ •

International Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	<ul style="list-style-type: none">   (+ appears) ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter phone number with area code ➔  • Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries.
Adding a country code automatically when placing calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Start Here</i> ➔ • ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ • ➔  <i>Call</i> ➔ <i>Int'l Calling</i> ➔ • ➔ <i>Auto Add Code</i> ➔ • ➔ See below Activating Auto Add Code <i>Switch On/Off</i> ➔ • ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ • • When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless + is included. Selecting a Country from List <i>Country Code</i> ➔ • ➔ <i>Select country</i> ➔ • Specifying a Country Code <i>Country Code</i> ➔ • ➔ <i>Enter Code</i> ➔ • ➔ Enter country code ➔ •
Saving frequently used international prefix	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ • ➔  <i>Call</i> ➔ <i>Int'l Calling</i> ➔ • ➔ <i>Int'l Prefix</i> ➔ • ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ • ➔ Enter prefix ➔ •

Adding/changing/deleting country codes

Start Here ➔ • ➔ *Settings* ➔ • ➔  *Call* ➔ *Int'l Calling* ➔ • ➔ *Country Codes* ➔ • ➔ See below

Adding

<Empty> ➔ • ➔ Enter name ➔ • ➔ Enter country code ➔ •

Changing

Select country ➔ • ➔ *Change* ➔ • ➔ Enter name ➔ • ➔ Enter country code ➔ •

Deleting

Select country ➔ • ➔ *Delete* ➔ • ➔ Yes ➔ •



During a Call

■ Voice Call & Video Call

Muting Microphone	Voice Call During a call, (press again to cancel)
	Video Call During a call, → <i>Mute</i> → • To cancel, select <i>Unmute</i> .
Activating/canceling Loudspeaker	Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call During a call, → While message appears, • To cancel, press .
	Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call During a call, (press again to activate)
Opening Phone Book	During a call, → <i>Phone Book</i> → → Select entry → • Press twice to return to call window.
Saving Phone Book entries	During a call, → <i>Phone Book</i> → → → <i>Add New Entry</i> → → Complete fields → • Press to return to call window.
Disabling touch tone signaling	During a call, → <i>Disable DTMF</i> →
Placing calls on hold	During a call, → <i>Hold</i> → • Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold. • To resume Voice Calls, press , select <i>Retrieve</i> and press .• To resume Video Calls, press .

■ Voice Call Only

Recording caller voice	During a call, → <i>Record Caller Voice</i> → → Recording starts → → Recording ends
Opening messages	During a call, → <i>Messaging</i> → → Select Messaging folder → → Select folder → → Select message → • Press three times to return to call window.
Creating messages	During a call, → <i>Messaging</i> → → <i>Create Message or Create New SMS</i> → → Complete message →

■ Video Call Only

Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness	During a call, → <i>Exposure</i> → → Adjust level → • Alternative Image brightness is fixed.
-------------------------------------	---



Decoration Call	
Creating Decoration Call files	<p>Start Here → Data Folder → Decoration Call → Create New File → Text Input → Enter text → Images</p> <p>See below</p> <p>Using Still Images Picture → Pictures → Select file → Sounds → Select folder → Select file → Yes or No → Save here</p> <p>Using Video Video → Videos → Select file → Yes or No → Save here</p> <p>Using Flash® Animation Flash® → Select file → Yes or No → Save here</p>
	<p>Edit → Data Folder → Decoration Call → Select file → Edit → Edit → Save as New or Overwrite</p> <p>• For Save as New, select Save here and press .</p>
	<p>Select record → Save File → Save here</p>
	<p>Settings → Call → Decoration Call → Switch On/Off → Off → Enter Handset Code</p>
Hiding incoming Decoration Call window	<p>Settings → Call → Decoration Call → Play in Receiving → Off</p>

Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files	<p>Start Here → Data Folder → Decoration Call → Create New File → Text Input → Enter text → Images</p> <p>See below</p> <p>Capturing Still Images Picture → Take Picture → to shoot → Save here</p> <p>Recording Video Video → Record Video → to start recording → to stop → Save → Yes or No → Save here</p>
	<p>Showing options upon Decoration Call failure</p> <p>Settings → Call → Decoration Call → Notice → On</p>



Call Log	
Dialing from records	<p>Calling Dialed Numbers (Redial)</p> <p> → Select record → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To place Video Calls, press instead of , then select Video Call and press .
	<p>Calling from Received Call Records</p> <p> → Select record → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To place Video Calls, press instead of , then select Video Call and press .
Sending messages from records	<p> → Select record → → Create Message → → S! Mail or SMS → → Complete message → </p>
Saving Phone Book entries from records	<p> → Select record → → Save to Phone Book → → As New Entry → → Complete other fields → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.
Placing Decoration Calls from records	<p> → Select record → → Deco. Call → → Deco. Call File → → Select/create file → </p>
Initiating S! Circle Talk from records	<p> → Select record → → Call S! Circle Talk → → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set My Status to Online first.
Deleting records	<p>One Record</p> <p> → Select record → → Delete → → Yes → </p>
	<p>All Records</p> <p> → → Delete All → → Enter Handset Code → → Yes → </p>

Hiding Dialed Ranking	<p> → Phone → → Call Log Settings → → Set Dialed Ranking → → Hide Dialed Ranking → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset Code is required to re-select Show Dialed Ranking.
Excluding rejected incoming calls	<p> → Phone → → Call Log Settings → → Rejected Numbers → → Do not Record → → Enter Handset Code → </p>



Call Time/Call Cost/Data Communication

■ Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Minute Minder → ☐ → On → ☐
Hiding Call Time during calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Disp. Time/Cost → ☐ → Call Time Counter → ☐ → Off → ☐
Resetting Call Timers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Call Time & Cost → ☐ → Call Timers → ☐ → Clear Timers → ☐ → Enter Handset Code → ☐ → Yes → ☐

■ Call Costs

Showing Call Cost after each call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Disp. Time/Cost → ☐ → Display Call Cost → ☐ → On → ☐
Resetting Call Costs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Call Time & Cost → ☐ → Call Costs → ☐ → Show Call Cost → ☐ → ☐ → Enter PIN2 → ☐ → Yes → ☐

Limiting Call Costs

Start Here ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Call Time & Cost → ☐ → Call Costs → ☐ → See below

Setting a Limit

Max Cost/Residual → ☐ → ☐ → Set → ☐ → Enter PIN2 → ☐ → Enter amount → ☐

- May be unavailable depending on subscription status.

Changing the Limit

Max Cost/Residual → ☐ → ☐ → Enter PIN2 → ☐ → Enter amount → ☐

Checking Remaining Amount

Max Cost/Residual → ☐

Showing amount in another currency

☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Call Time & Cost → ☐ → Call Costs → ☐ → Cost Units → ☐ → ☐ → Enter PIN2 → ☐ → Enter currency → ☐ → Enter exchange rate (per yen) → ☐ → ☐

■ Data Communication

Checking packet transmission volume

Start Here ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Call Time & Cost → ☐ → Data Counter → ☐ → See below

Most Recent Volume

Last Data → ☐

All Volume

All Data → ☐

Resetting Data Counter

☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Call → Call Time & Cost → ☐ → Data Counter → ☐ → Clear Counter → ☐ → Yes → ☐



Optional Services

■ All Services

Checking service status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings → Call → Select service → Status • For Call Barring, select restriction and press OK.
-------------------------	---

■ Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings → Call → Call Waiting → On
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A tone sounds during a Voice Call → Hold • Press Hold to switch between lines. • Press End to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.

■ Group Calling (Contract Required)

Opening another line during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During a Voice Call, enter phone number → Hold • Long Press Hold to select a number from Call Log records.
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During a Voice Call, Hold • Press Hold to switch between lines.
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • While switching between lines, Hold → Group Calling → Conference All
Switching to private conversation during Group Calling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During a Voice Call, select number/name → Private

■ Call Barring

Rejecting calls by number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Rejected Numbers → Black List → See below
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Saving Numbers • Set Reject Number → <Empty> → Enter phone number • When using Double Number in Dual Mode, select a line type and press OK.
Rejecting calls without designating numbers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Rejected Numbers → See below
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activating Black List • Switch On/Off → On • Calls from Unsaved Numbers Unknown → On • Calls with No/Undisplayable Caller ID or from Public Phones Withheld → On
Changing Network Password	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings → Call → Call Barring → Change NW Password → Enter current Network Password → Enter new Network Password → Re-enter new Network Password



Designating numbers to reject from saved information	<p>[Start Here] → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Rejected Numbers → Black List → Set Reject Number → <Empty> → See below</p> <p>From Phone Book Ph. Book List → Select entry</p> <p>From Call Log Records From Call Log → Select record</p> <p>From SI Friend's Status Member List From Friend's Status → Select member</p>
	<p>[Start Here] → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Rejected Numbers → Black List → See below</p> <p>Editing Numbers Select number/name → Edit</p> <p>Deleting Numbers Select number/name → Delete → Yes</p>

Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction	<p>[Start Here] → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Outgoing Calls → See below</p> <p>Setting Restriction Select restriction → On → Enter Network Password</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Outgoing SMS messages are also restricted. Outgoing SI Circle Talk requests are not affected. Following restrictions are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls Local & Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan
	<p>Canceling All Restrictions Cancel All → Enter Network Password</p>
	<p>[Start Here] → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Incoming Calls → See below</p> <p>Setting Restriction Select restriction → On → Enter Network Password</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incoming SMS messages are also restricted. Incoming SI Circle Talk requests are not affected. Following restrictions are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan <p>Canceling All Restrictions Cancel All → Enter Network Password</p>
<p>Caller ID</p> <p>Showing/hiding Caller ID → Settings → Call → Show My Number → On or Off</p>	



Settings

Voice Call

Answering Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones

Start Here → Settings → Call → Auto Answer → Enter Handset Code → See below

Activating Auto Answer

Switch On/Off → On

- When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.

Changing Ring Time

Answer Time → Enter time

Video Call

Sending External Camera image when initiating Video Calls

Settings → Call → Video Call → Camera Picture → Default Image → External Camera

Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls

Settings → Call → Video Call → Loudspeaker → Off

Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls

Settings → Call → Video Call → Mute Microphone → On

Changing Alternative Image that is sent when initiating Video Calls

Settings → Call → Video Call → Camera Picture → Alternative Image → Select folder → Select file

Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images

Settings → Call → Video Call → Incoming Picture or Outgoing Picture → Select quality

Setting image that is sent while call is on hold

Settings → Call → Video Call → Hold Guidance Pict → Select folder → Select file

- Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen images.

Setting Backlight status

Settings → Call → Video Call → Backlight → Select option

- Selecting **Normal Setting** applies Display Backlight setting.



Receiving a Call

? Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice




- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

Placing a Call


? Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

? Cannot place call

- If  appears, cancel Keypad Lock.
- If  appears, cancel Function Lock.
- If  appears, cancel Offline Mode.

? Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone

- Did you include the area code or the first 0? Dial the number including the area code or 0.
- Handset may be out-of-range ( appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

During a Call

? Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

? Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

? Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

? Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (P.3-3).

Other

? Talk Time on Display seems incorrect

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

? Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding

- Does the number start with 1, 00, 0120 or 0990? Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.



Messaging	4-2
Basics	4-2
Customizing Handset Address	4-3
Sending Messages	4-4
Sending S! Mail	4-4
Sending SMS.....	4-7
Incoming Messages	4-8
Opening & Replying.....	4-8
Handling Messages	4-10
Managing & Using Messages.....	4-10
Sorting Messages.....	4-12

Chat Folder	4-13
Using Chat Folders.....	4-13
Mail Groups	4-14
Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail	4-14
PC Mail	4-15
Additional Functions	4-18
Troubleshooting	4-33

4

Messaging



Basics

Use the following messaging services.

SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumeric characters with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc; attach media files, etc.

Large Size Messages

Transmit messages of up to 1 MB including large images or multiple files; may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 831SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

Available Entry Items

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available
PC Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-22).

Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset automatically resends unsent messages up to two times. Cancel to disable (P.4-28).



Customizing Handset Address


Change alphanumeric before @ of the default handset mail address.

For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-22).

Changing Address

1  → **Settings** → 

2 **Address Settings** → 

- Handset connects to the Internet. Select **English** and press , then follow onscreen instructions.

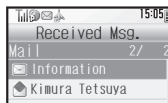
Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.



To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 **Message** → 



2 **Information** → 



3 **Yes** → 



4 

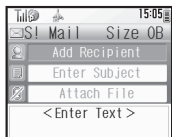


Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

1 ➔ Create Message ➔

When a PC Mail Account exists, select **S! Mail** and press .



S! Mail Composition Window

2 Select recipient field ➔

3 Phone Book ➔

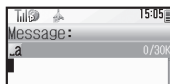
4 Select entry ➔

5 Select number or mail address ➔

- Omit if only one number or address is saved.
- When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

6 Select subject field ➔ ➔ Enter subject ➔

7 Select message text field ➔



Text Entry Window

8 Enter message ➔



S! Mail Composition Window

9 ➔ Transmission starts

- To cancel, press during transmission.

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Previewing Outgoing Message

After , ➔ Preview Message ➔

Pictogram Entry

- In Pictogram List, press to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
- Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

[S! Mail Composition Window] ➔ Switch Line ➔ ➔ Select line ➔


Advanced

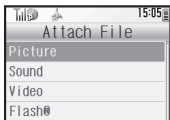
- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Inserting signature automatically
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on P.4-18)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on P.4-19 - 4-20)
- Requesting Delivery Report for all messages
- Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages
- Hiding progress bar while sending messages (And more on P.4-28)




Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, select attachment field 




- 2 **Picture**    **Select folder** 



- 3 **Select file** 









Attach File Window

- 4  **Transmission starts**

Attaching Non-Image Files

- In , select a folder other than **Picture** and press , then select a file.

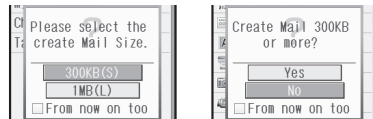
Attaching Multiple Files



After , **Attach (1)**   **Attach File**   **From** 

- **X** in **Attach (X)** indicates the number of attached files.

Message Size Limit

When message size reaches certain limit upon attaching a file, one of the following confirmations appears:






Select message size limit or choose **Yes** and press  to proceed. (Images may be resized automatically.) To make selection the default setting hereafter, press  to check **From now on too** check-box. (Confirmation will be disabled.)

If Recipient Cannot Receive Large Messages (Up to 1 MB)


- Message may be truncated or attachments may be lost.

Sending Feeling Mail

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message,   **Feeling Settings** 









- 2 **Select category, e.g., Happy/Glad** 

- 3 **Select item, e.g., I Love You** 









- 4  **Transmission starts**

Canceling Feeling Mail

[S! Mail Composition Window] Select subject field    **Select Pictogram, e.g.,**   

Advanced

-   Changing attached image size
-  Set Auto Play File (And more on P.4-20)
-  Limiting S! Mail message size
-  Enabling image auto-resize
-  Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play (And more on P.4-30)



Sending Graphic Mail

Follow these steps to:

- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

1 In text entry window, (Long)

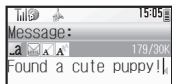
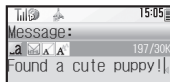
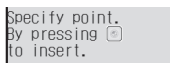


Graphic Mail Window

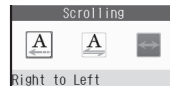
2 Font Size: → ●



3 Select size → ● → Enter text

4 → ● → **BG Color:** → ● →
Select color → ●5 → ● → **Picture** → ● → Select folder → ● → Select file → ●

6 Select location → ● → CLEAR BACK

7 → ● → **My Pictogram** → ● →
→ ● → Select file → ● → CLEAR BACK8 → ● → **Effect** → ●9 **Scrolling** → ●10 Select direction → ● →
Enter text

11 ● → ● → ● → Transmission starts

Canceling Last Action

[Graphic Mail Window] **Undo** → ●

Cancelling All Graphic Mail Settings

[Graphic Mail Window] **Cancel** → ●
→ **Yes** → ●

Saving as Templates

After 10, ● → ● → **Save as Template** → ● → Enter name → ●
→ **Save here** → ●

- Only the message text is saved.

Advanced

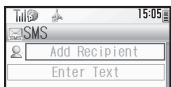
- Creating Graphic Mail from templates
- Changing text color, size & effect
- Changing text color
- Inserting background sound
- Inserting Flash® file
- Inserting horizontal line
- Flashing text
- Aligning text (left/right/center) (And more on P.4-20 - 4-21)



Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

1  ➔ **Create New SMS** ➔ 





SMS Composition Window

2  ➔ **Select recipient field** ➔ 

3  ➔ **Phone Book** ➔ 

4  ➔ **Select entry** ➔ 

5  ➔ **Select number** ➔ 



- Omit 5 if only one number is saved.

6  ➔ **Select message text field** ➔ 




Text Entry Window

7  ➔ **Enter message** ➔ 



SMS Composition Window

8  ➔ **Transmission starts**

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

When Message Text Exceeds Limit

- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:












Yes ➔ 

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

[SMS Composition Window]  ➔

Switch Line ➔  ➔ **Select line** ➔ 

Advanced

-   Using other recipient entry methods
-  Adding recipients
-  Using Speed Dial/Mail list
-  Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on P.4-18)
-  Saving without sending
-  Requesting delivery confirmation
-  Changing Server sent message storage limit (And more on P.4-19 - 4-20)
-  Changing Server sent message storage limit
-  Changing SMS Server number
-  Changing character encoding for composing messages (P.4-32)



Opening & Replying

Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.
See P.4-17 to receive PC Mail.



Important Message Retrieval Notes

- By default, complete messages including attachments are retrieved in and outside Japan; transmission fees apply depending on subscribed price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval while abroad may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming.
- To retrieve only the initial portion of message text automatically, set Message DL to **Manual**; retrieve complete message manually as needed.

Delivery Report

Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:

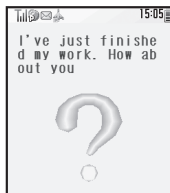
Delivery Report → → **Select message with report** → →

1 Message →



Message List

2 Select message →



- Message text appears in 3D animation (3D Pictogram).

3 Select 3D Pictogram option



- Message window opens.

Receiving Feeling Mail

- Small Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz

Enter or select answer →

- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is included in subject or message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

Mail Notice

- When Message DL is not set to **Auto (All)**, Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
 - The message was sent to multiple recipients
 - Files are attached to the message

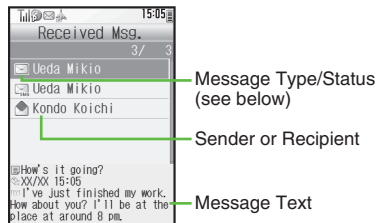
Advanced

- Opening new mail out of Standby ● Retrieving new S! Mail manually ● Viewing new messages on External Display (And more on P.4-21 - 4-22)
- Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders ● Disabling 3D Pictogram ● Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually ● Retrieving specified messages (And more on P.4-29 - 4-30)



Window Description

Message List

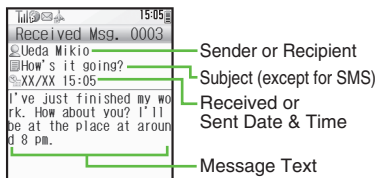


Message Type/Status

	Unread		Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
	Read		Unread Delivery Report
	Sent		Attachments
	Failed		Protected
	Replied		Priority (High)
	Forwarded		Priority (Low)
	Send Reservation set		USIM Card SMS

SMS or PC appears for SMS/PC Mail messages (SMS, etc.).

Message Window



Press **[F5]** to open previous (older) message, or **[F6]** to open next (newer) one.

Line Type Indicators

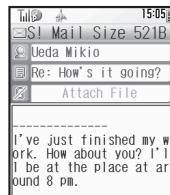
- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, Line indicators (and) appear in message list.

Changing Font Size

- [F3]** (Long) to enlarge or **[F4]** (Long) to reduce

Replying to Messages

1 In message window,



- Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).

2 Complete message

Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients

After 1, To Sender or Reply All



Auto Reply

- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode (Manner mode, etc.).

Advanced

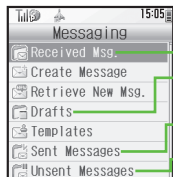
- Saving attachments to Data Folder
- Saving to Phone Book
- Using linked info
- Looking up message text words in dictionaries
- Jumping to message top/bottom
- Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers
- Selecting mail type/quote option
- Opening received message for reference
- Replying quickly using fixed text
- Replying to messages automatically (And more on P.4-22 - 4-23)
- Selecting quote option (P.4-28)



Managing & Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



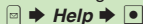
- Received Messages
- Incomplete/Unsent Messages
- Sent Messages
- Failed or Send Reservation Messages

Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:



Checking Messages

- 1 ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔



Folder List

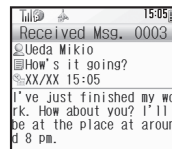
- When a PC Mail Account exists, PC Mail folder (folder with the name specified in Account Name) appears.
- Select Mail folder or PC Mail folder and press to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press .

- 2 **Select folder** ➔



Message List

- 3 **Select message** ➔



Message Window

Protecting Messages

- 1 **In message list, select message** ➔ ➔ **Manage Msg.** ➔

- 2 **Lock** ➔

Canceling Protection
In , **Unlock** ➔








Advanced

- Selecting multiple messages Color-tagging messages Deleting messages (And more on **P.4-24 - 4-25**)
- Forwarding messages Sending from Drafts Checking Server Mail message count and volume (And more on **P.4-27**)
- Changing message window scroll unit Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (And more on **P.4-28**)



Searching Messages






Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2  ➔ **Search** ➔ 
- 3 **Search All Msg.** ➔ 
- 4 **Select method** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter address or text** ➔ 

Searching by Folder

In , select folder ➔  ➔ **Search** ➔  ➔ **Search Folder** ➔  ➔ 

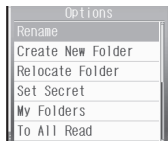
Searching Message Text

- Follow these steps to find specific words/phrases; limit search by character type.
[Message Window]  ➔ **Search Text** ➔  ➔ **Enter text** ➔ 
 - Press  or  to jump to next/previous search result.

Hiding Folders




Hide Received Msg./Sent Message folder to require Handset Code for access to the folder and messages within. Chat Folders are not affected.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2 **Select folder** ➔ 



- 3 **Set Secret** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔  ➔ 

Accessing Secret Folders

After 1,  ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

Advanced

-   Moving messages manually
-  Renaming folders
-  Deleting folders
-  Adding folders
-  Moving folders
-  Changing status of all messages within folders to read
-  Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders
-  Canceling Secret (P.4-25)



Sorting Messages

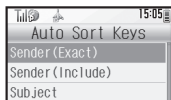
Sorting into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in sender/recipient address, subject or SMS message text.

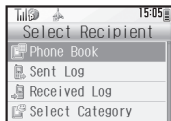
1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔

2 Select target folder ➔ 

3 **My Folders** ➔ ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔




4 **Sender(Exact)**
(**Recipient(Exact)** for Sent Messages) ➔




5 Select method ➔ ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔



6  ➔ **Saved**

Sorting by Part of Mail Address

In , **Sender(Include)**
(**Recipient(Include)** for Sent Messages)

➔ ➔ **Enter text** ➔ ➔ 

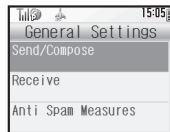
Sorting by Part of Subject/SMS Message Text

In , **Subject** ➔ ➔ **Enter text** ➔ ➔ 

Filtering Spam

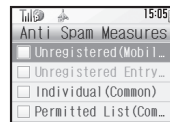
Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:
Alternatively, set sort keys to filter messages.

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **General Settings** ➔



2 **Anti Spam Measures** ➔

3 **Enter Handset Code** ➔






4 **Unregistered(Mobile)** ➔ (✓)

5  ➔

Exempting Messages from Filtering

After , **Permitted List(Common)** ➔




 ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔ ➔

Select key ➔ ➔ **Select/enter number/address/subject** ➔ ➔  ➔ (✓) ➔ 

When a PC Mail Account Exists

- Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

Advanced

-  Re-sorting messages
-  Sorting spam by setting keys
-  Editing/deleting sort keys (P.4-26)

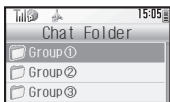


Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.
To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

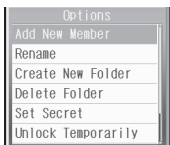
Saving Members

- 1 ➔ **Chat Folder** ➔

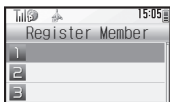


Chat Folder List

- 2 **Select folder** ➔



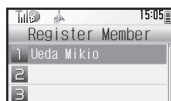
- 3 **Add New Member** ➔



- 4 **Select blank entry** ➔

- Select saved member to edit number/address.

- 5 **Select method** ➔ ➔
**Select/enter number/
address** ➔



- Repeat 4 - 5 to add members.

- 6 ➔ **Saved**

Changing Members

In 4, select member ➔ ➔ **Change Member** ➔ ➔ From 5

Deleting Members

In 4, select member ➔ ➔ **Delete** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ 6

Opening Chat Folders

- 1 **In Chat Folder list, select folder** ➔



- 2 **Select message** ➔

Advanced

- Deleting folders ● Deleting all messages ● Resetting Chat Folders (P.4-26)



Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

Save target recipients to Phone Book beforehand.

1  → **Settings** → 

2 **Set Mail Group** → 



Mail Group Entry Window

3 **<Add New Group>** →  → 

Enter name → 

4 **Select Group** → 






5 **<Assign New Entry>** →  → 

→ **Select entry** → 



6 **Select number or mail address** → 



- Omit  if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat  -  to add members.

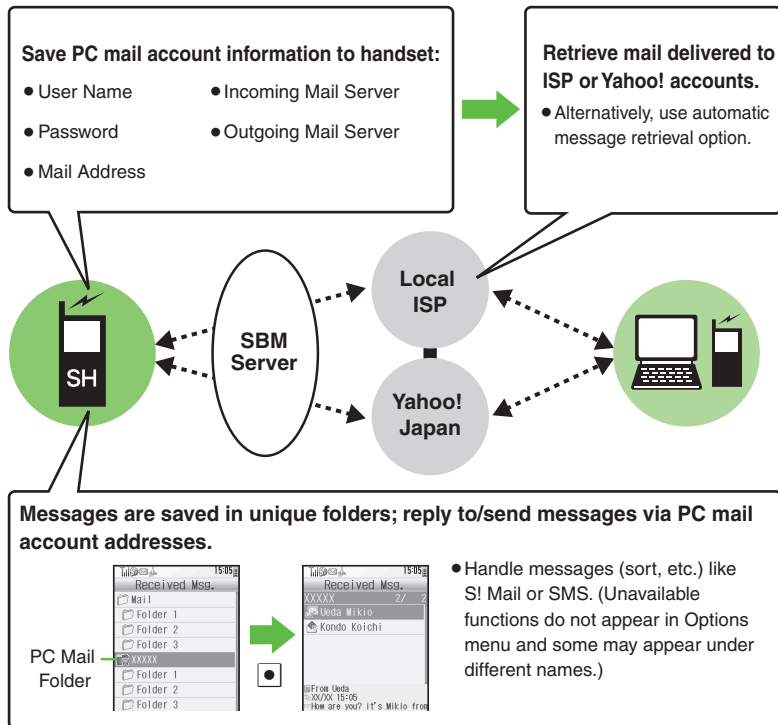
7  → **Saved**

Advanced

-   Renaming Mail Groups
-   Deleting Mail Groups/Group members
-   Changing Mail Group members (P.4-26)

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.



Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high charges; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.



PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.


Mandatory Items for Retrieval

User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

Mandatory Items for Transmission

Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

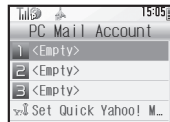
Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press .

- 1  → **Settings** →  → **PC Mail Settings** → 







- 2 **PC Mail Account** → 



- 3 **<Empty>** → 

- 4 **Account Name** →  → **Enter name** → 

- 5 **Set Receiving** →  → **Select item** →  → **Select/enter item** →  → 

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.



- 6 **Set Sending** →  → **Select item** →  → **Select/enter item** → 

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

- 7  →  → 



- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses



- In , **Set Quick Yahoo! Mail** →  → **Yes or No** → 

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Choose **No** to create a new account.

Editing Accounts











- In , select account →  → **From** 

Deleting Accounts

- In , select account →  → **Yes** → 

Saving User ID & Password for Transmission

- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

- In , **Set Sending** →  → **Sender Auth.** →  → **SMTP Auth.** →  → **User Name** →  → **Enter name** →  → **Password** →  → **Enter password** →  →  → 




Retrieving New PC Mail





Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.

- 1  ➔ 
- 2 
- 3 **Select PC Mail folder** ➔ 
 - ➔ **Select message** ➔ 





- Press  to retrieve full message.
- Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

Deleting Messages

- [Message List] **Select message** ➔ 
- ➔ **Delete** ➔ 
 - ➔ **Select option** ➔ 
 - ➔ **Yes** ➔ 

Retrieving Messages by Account

- After 1, select account ➔  ➔ 





Checking Received PC Mail

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg.** ➔ 
 - ➔ **Select folder** ➔ 
 - Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.
- 2 **Select message** ➔ 
 - Message window opens.




Replying to PC Mail

- 1 **In message window,** 
 - PC Mail Composition window opens.
 - Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).
- 2 **Complete message** ➔  ➔ **Transmission starts**

Replying without Quoting Original Message Text





- [Message Window]  ➔ **Reply** ➔ 
- ➔ **PC Mail** ➔ 
 - ➔ **Complete message** ➔ 

Changing Account for Outgoing Messages

- [PC Mail Composition Window] **Select recipient field** ➔  ➔ **From:** ➔  ➔ **Select account** ➔ 

Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

- 1  ➔ **Create Message** ➔ 
- 2 **Select PC Mail Account** ➔ 
- 3 **Complete message** ➔  ➔ **Transmission starts**








Converting PC Mail to S! Mail

- After ,  ➔ **Convert to S! Mail** ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔ 

Note

- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

Advanced

-   Retrieving complete PC Mail messages
-  Retrieving new messages automatically
-  Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder
-  Disabling automatic word wrap
-  Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses
-  Restricting complete message retrieval by size (P.4-31)



Creating/Sending Messages

Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → Select method → Select/enter number/address →
Adding recipients	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → Add Recipient → Select method → Select/enter number/address →
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → Select recipient → Select status → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.

Using Speed Dial/Mail list	<p>Saving Recipients Settings → Speed Dial/Mail → <Empty> → Select entry → Select number or mail address → Do not Assign →</p> <p>Creating Messages In Standby, [0] - [9] (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select S! Mail or SMS and press .
----------------------------	--

Editing/deleting recipients	<p>Editing Recipients Select recipient → Edit →</p> <p>Deleting a Recipient Select recipient → Delete →</p> <p>Deleting All Recipients Select recipient → Delete All → Yes →</p>
-----------------------------	--

Editing Speed Dial/Mail list	Start Here → Settings → Speed Dial/Mail → See below
	<p>Editing Entries Select entry → Change → Select number/address → Select new number/address →</p>
	<p>Canceling Entries Select entry → Remove Selected → Yes →</p>
	<p>Canceling All Entries Remove All → Yes →</p>

Message Text

Inserting signature automatically	Settings → S! Mail Settings → Signature → Edit → Enter signature → Auto Insert → On → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies. Not available for SMS. When using Double Number in Dual Mode, set signature by mode.
Inserting signature manually	In text entry window, Insert/Font Size → Signature →
Inserting ASCII Art	In text entry window, Call ASCII Art → Select entry →
Previewing 3D Pictogram	In Mail Composition window, 3D Pictogram →
Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)	In Mail Composition window, Change to SMS or Convert to S! Mail → Yes →



Save/Send Reservation/Cancel

Saving without sending	After completing message, Save to Drafts
Sending automatically later	Start Here After completing message, Send Reservation See below
	Auto Send when Signal Returns Within the Network Yes
Canceling sent S! Mail	Designating Send Date/Time (within one week) Date & Time Enter date/time Yes
	Sent Messages Select folder Select message Set Sent Cancel Yes

• Available for messages sent to SoftBank handsets.

Messaging Settings

- For SMS, only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available.
- For PC Mail, only Reply to Settings and Priority are available.

Requesting delivery confirmation	In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Delivery Report On
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Priority Select priority
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Set Auto Delete On

- Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered.
- Open sent message to check delivery status indicator:
 - : Delivered, : Unknown, : Failed
- Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

• Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Adding a reply request

In Mail Composition window, **Messaging Settings** **Reply Request** **On**

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Restricting forward/delete

In Mail Composition window, **Messaging Settings** **Forward NG or Delete NG** **On**

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Start Here In Mail Composition window, **Messaging Settings** **Quiz** **Switch On/Off** **On** **See below**

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice)
Select question **Selection** **Select number** **Enter/edit option** **Enter/edit all options** **Select answer**

- May be unavailable for some questions.

Locking message with Quiz

Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry)
Select question **Match Characters** **Enter answer**

- May be unavailable for some questions.

Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice)
<Create Original> **Enter question** **Selection** **Select number** **Enter option** **Complete entry** **Select answer**

Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry)
<Create Original> **Enter question** **Match Characters** **Enter answer**

Editing assigned Quiz

In Mail Composition window, **Messaging Settings** **Quiz** **Edit Question** **Edit question/options/answer**

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.



Lowering size limit for outgoing S! Mail messages	In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Create Msg. Size 300KB
Designating/editing reply-to address	[Start Here] In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Reply to Settings See below Designating Switch On/Off On Select method Select/enter address
Changing Server sent message storage limit	In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Expiry Time Select option • Available for SMS only.

■ Attachments















































Changing attached image size	Select attached file Resize Picture Select size • May be unavailable for some images.
Capturing/recording and attaching	[Start Here] Select attachment field See below Still Images Picture Take Picture to shoot
	Video Video Record Video to start recording to stop Accept Select storage media
	Sounds Sound Record Voice to start recording to stop Accept Select storage media

Set Auto Play File	Select attached file Set Auto Play File Switch On/Off On Enter Message Enter comment
	• Not available for PC Mail.

■ Graphic Mail























Creating Graphic Mail from templates	Opening Templates from Messaging Menu Templates Select template Complete message
	• Template size may change when used for creating messages.
	Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window In S! Mail Composition window, Launch Template Select template Complete message
	• Open a template before entering message text.
Changing text color, size & effect	In text entry window, (Long) Select start point Highlight text range Font Color:, Font Size: or Effect Set
Changing text color	In text entry window, (Long) Font Color: Select color Enter text
Inserting background sound	[Start Here] In text entry window, (Long) Insert See below Inserting BGM Sound Select folder Select file
	Deleting Delete BGM Yes





































Inserting Flash® file	In text entry window,  (Long)      
Previewing Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file,    • When Graphic Mail window is open, press  first.
Deleting Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, move cursor before Flash® icon  • When Graphic Mail window is open, press  first.
Inserting horizontal line	In text entry window,  (Long)    
Flashing text	 In text entry window,  (Long) 
	Flashing       
	Canceling          
Aligning text (left/right/center)	In text entry window,  (Long)        Enter text




























































Receiving/Opening Messages

Receiving

Opening new mail out of Standby	 (Long)
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	  • When a PC Mail Account exists, select S! Mail and press  . • Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.
Retrieving Server Mail list	      • When using Double Number in Dual Mode, select a line and press  to proceed.
Retrieving remaining portions	Via Mail Notice In message list, select Mail Notice    Via Server Mail List        • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press  .



Retrieving all Server Mail	<p>[Start Here]   Server Mail Box   See below</p> <p>Directly from Server Retrieve All   </p> <p>Via Server Mail List Mail List     Retrieve All  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press .
	<p>Opening</p> <p>Viewing new messages on External Display</p> <p>  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available with handset closed. • Press  for more; press  to navigate back.
Message Window	
Saving attachments to Data Folder	<p>In message window, select file    Save to Data Folder   Enter name   Save here </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For templates, Save as Template appears. (Omit file name entry step.)
Installing attached widgets	<p>In message window, select file    Install Attach   Enter name  </p>

Using attachments	<p>[Start Here] In message window, select file   See below</p> <p>As Wallpaper Set as Wallpaper    Enter name    Save here   </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option.
	<p>As Ringtone/Ringvideo Set as Ringtone or Set as Ring Video    Enter name     Save here    Select item </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For For New Message or For New PC Mail, enter ring time and press .
Playing slides	<p>In message window,    Slide Play </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A slide consists of message text with attachments.
Saving to Phone Book	<p>Saving Sender Address In message window,    Save Address      Select number or mail address    As New Entry     Complete other fields  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.
	<p>Saving Linked Info In message window, select number or mail address     Save to Phone Book or Save Address     As New Entry   </p> <p>Complete other fields    </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.



Using linked info	Dialing Numbers In message window, select number → → → <i>Call or Video Call</i> →
	Sending Messages In message window, select number or mail address → → <i>Create Message</i> → → <i>SI Mail or SMS</i> → → <i>Complete message</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.
	Accessing Internet Sites In message window, select URL → → <i>Yes</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select <i>PC Site Br.</i> to connect via PC Site Browser.
Copying text	In message window, → <i>Copy</i> → → → <i>See below</i>
	Sender/Recipient Number/Address <i>Address</i> → → → <i>Select number/address</i> →
Looking up message text words in dictionaries	Subject or Message Text <i>Subject or Message Text</i> → → → <i>Select first character</i> → → → <i>Highlight text range</i> →
	In message window, → <i>Copy & Search Dict.</i> → → → <i>Select first character</i> → → → <i>Highlight text range</i> → → → <i>Select dictionary</i> → → → <i>Search</i> → → → <i>Select word</i> →
Jumping to message top/bottom	In message window, → <i>View Settings</i> → → → <i>Scroll Jump</i> → → → <i>Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom</i> →
Deleting attachments	In message window, select file → → <i>Remove File</i> → → <i>Yes</i> →
Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers	In message window, → <i>Report Spam</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Signature is not inserted automatically. Not available for PC Mail.

■ Replying

Selecting mail type/quote option	In message window, → <i>Reply</i> → → → <i>Select type/option</i> → → → <i>Complete message</i> →
Opening received message for reference	In message window, → <i>Rep. with View</i> → → → <i>Select option</i> → → → <i>Complete message</i> →
Replying quickly using fixed text	Editing Quick Reply Text → <i>Settings</i> → → → <i>General Settings</i> → → → <i>Send/Compose</i> → → → <i>Set Quick Reply</i> → → → <i>Select text</i> → → → <i>Edit</i> →
	Using Quick Reply In message window, (Long) → <i>Select text</i> →
Replying to messages automatically	→ <i>Settings</i> → → → <i>General Settings</i> → → → <i>Send/Compose</i> → → → <i>Auto Reply</i> → → → <i>See below</i>
	Saving Recipients <i>Address Setting</i> → → → <i>Select blank entry</i> → → → <i>Select method</i> → → → <i>Select/enter number/address</i> → → → <i>Select mode</i> → → (<input type="checkbox"/> / <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select saved recipient and press to edit number/address.
	Editing Reply Text <i>Reply Message</i> → → → <i>Select mode</i> → → → <i>Enter text</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Edit text for each mode.
Activating Auto Reply <i>Switch On/Off</i> → → → <i>On</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replies are sent via SI Mail. Replies are sent to the same sender only once after each time Auto Reply is activated. Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or while abroad. 	



Managing Messages

■ Message List

Selecting multiple messages	<p>Selecting</p> <p>In message list, [v] → Select message → [✓] (✓)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To uncheck, press [v] again.
	<p>Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once</p> <p>In message list, [m] → Manage Msg. → [v] → Check in Block → [v]</p>
	<p>Unchecking All</p> <p>In message list, [m] → Unselect All → [v]</p>
Color-tagging messages	<p>In message list, [m] → Manage Msg. → [v] → Color Label → [v] → Select color → [v]</p>
Sorting messages	<p>In message list, [m] → View Settings → [v] → Sort → [v] → Select option → [v]</p>
Opening sender/recipient details	<p>In message list, select message → [m] → View Mail Address → [v] → Select sender or recipient → [v]</p>
Checking memory status	<p>[m] → Memory Status → [v] → Select item → [v]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press [v] to check memory status by service (SMS & S! Mail or PC Mail). When using Double Number in Dual Mode, select a mode for SMS & S! Mail. USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.
Opening properties	<p>In message list, select message → [m] → Message Details → [v]</p>
Changing template name display	<p>[m] → Templates → [v] → [m] → Item Displayed → [v] → Select item → [v]</p>

Saving SMS messages to USIM Card	<p>In message list, select SMS message → [m] → Manage Msg. → [v] → SIM Sync → [v]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for compatible USIM Cards.
Changing received message status (read/unread)	<p>In message list, select message → [m] → Manage Msg. → [v] → Switch to Unread or Switch to Read → [v]</p>

■ Deleting Messages

Deleting messages	<p>One Message</p> <p>In message list, select message → [m] → Delete → [v] → Yes → [v]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, delete an open message.
	<p>All Messages</p> <p>In message list, [m] → Manage Msg. → [v] → Delete All → [v] → Delete All or Except Locked Msg. → [v] → Enter Handset Code → [v]</p>
	<p>All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages</p> <p>In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages), [m] → Delete All → [v] → Enter Handset Code → [v]</p>
Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice	<p>In message list, select Mail Notice → [m] → Delete → [v] → Select option → [v] → Yes → [v]</p>



Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	<p>(Start Here) → Server Mail Box → Mail List → See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press [OK].
	<p>One Message Select message → Delete → Yes</p>
	<p>All Messages Delete All → Enter Handset Code → Yes</p>
Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server	<p>(Start Here) → Server Mail Box → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → See below</p>
	<p>All Retrieved Messages Except New Msg.</p>
	<p>All Messages Delete All</p>
■ Folders	
Moving messages manually	<p>In message list, select message → Manage Msg. → Move to Folder → Select folder</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If sort messages confirmation appears, choose Yes and press [OK]; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.
	<p>In folder list, select folder → Rename → Enter name</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available in Chat Folder list as well.

Deleting folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → Delete → Enter Handset Code</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If delete message confirmation appears, choose Yes and press [OK]. When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
	<p>In folder list, Create New Folder → Enter name</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Adding folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → Relocate Folder → Select location</p>
	<p>In folder list, select folder → To All Read → Yes</p>
Moving folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → Protect → Yes</p>
	<p>In folder list, select folder → Protect → Not Protect → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel protection, select Not Protect and press [OK] in the steps above.
Changing status of all messages within folders to read	<p>In folder list, select folder → Protect → Yes</p>
	<p>In folder list, select folder → Protect → Not Protect → Yes</p>
Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders	<p>In folder list, select folder → Protect → Yes</p>
	<p>In folder list, select folder → Protect → Not Protect → Yes</p>
Canceling Secret	<p>Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder → Unset Secret → Enter Handset Code</p>
	<p>Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder → Unset Secret → Enter Handset Code</p>



■ Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting messages	In folder list, select folder → → <i>Classify</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Sorting spam by setting keys	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>General Settings</i> → → <i>Anti Spam Measures</i> → → Enter Handset Code → → <i>Individual(Common)</i> → (✓) → → Select blank entry → → Select key → → → Select/enter number/address/subject → → → → →
Editing/deleting sort keys	<small>(Start Here)</small> In folder list, select folder → → <i>My Folders</i> → → Select entry → See below
	Editing Sender/Recipient Key → <i>Replace</i> → → Select method → → Select/enter number/address → →
	Editing Subject Key → <i>Edit</i> → →
	Deleting an Entry → <i>Delete</i> → → <i>Yes</i> → →
	Deleting All Entries → <i>Clear All</i> → → <i>Yes</i> → →

■ Chat Folders

Deleting folders	→ <i>Chat Folder</i> → → Select folder → <i>Delete Folder</i> → → Enter Handset Code → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If delete message confirmation appears, choose <i>Yes</i> and press . When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
------------------	--

























Deleting all messages	→ <i>Chat Folder</i> → → Select folder → → → <i>Manage Msg.</i> → → <i>Delete All</i> → → <i>Yes</i> →
Resetting Chat Folders	→ <i>Chat Folder</i> → → → <i>Reset</i> → → Enter Handset Code → → <i>Yes</i> →

■ Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Set Mail Group</i> → → Select Group → → <i>Edit Name</i> → → Enter name → → <i>Yes</i> →
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	<small>(Start Here)</small> → <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Set Mail Group</i> → → → → Select Group → See below
	Mail Groups → <i>Delete</i> → → <i>Yes</i> → → Enter Handset Code →
	Group Members → Select member → → <i>Remove Entry</i> → → <i>Yes</i> → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.
Changing Mail Group members	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Set Mail Group</i> → → Select Group → → Select member → → <i>Re-assign Entry</i> → → Select entry → → Select number or mail address → → <i>Yes</i> → →










Using Messages










Forwarding messages	In message window,  → Forward →  → Select recipient field →  → Select method →  → Select/enter number/address →  →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Attached files are forwarded. To forward SMS messages, select ! Mail or SMS and press .
Sending from Drafts	 → Drafts →  → Select message →  → Complete message → 
Sending unsent messages	Start Here In message list (Unsent Messages), select message →  → See below Sending without Editing Resend →  Edit & Send Edit →  → Complete message → 
Using sent messages	In message list (Sent Messages), select message →  → Edit & Send →  → Complete message → 
Saving schedules from message list	In message list, select message →  → Manage Msg. →  → Save to Calendar →  → Enter subject →  → Enter start/end date/ time →  → Complete other fields →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Source message is accessible from schedule window (via Related Mail in Options menu).


Forwarding Server Mail

Via Mail Notice

In message list, select Mail Notice →  →
Forward →  → **Notifi. Forward** (forward Mail
Notice text only) or **Remote Forward** →  →
Select recipient field →  → Select method →
 → Select/enter number/address →  → 


Via Server Mail List

 → **Server Mail Box** →  → **Mail List** → 
→ Select message →  → **Remote Forward** →
 → Select recipient field →  → Select
method →  → Select/enter number/address
→  → 

- If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

Opening Server Mail properties

 → **Server Mail Box** →  → **Mail List** → 
Select message →  → **Message Details** → 

- If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

Checking Server Mail message count and volume

 → **Server Mail Box** →  → **Mailbox Volume**
→ 



General Settings

Changing message window scroll unit	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Scroll Unit → ● → Select unit → ●
Changing message list view	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Message List View → ● → Select option → ●
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Address View → ● → Show All → ●
Changing view for Received Msg. folder	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Received Msg. View → ● → Select option → ● ● Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Sent Msg. View → ● → Select option → ● ● Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Auto Delete → ● → Received Msg. → ● → Select option → ●
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Auto Delete → ● → Sent Messages → ● → Not Auto Del → ●
Changing spam report recipient	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Report Spam → ● → Edit address → ● → Yes → ●

General Settings (Send/Compose)

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Delivery Report → ● → On → ● ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Auto Resend → ● → Off → ●
Designating/editing reply-to address	(Start Here) ☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Reply to Settings → ● → See below Designating Switch On/Off → ● → On → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter address → ● Editing Edit Address → ● → Edit → ●
Selecting quote option	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Reply With Text → ● → Select option → ●
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Send/Compose → ● → Sending Status → ● → Off(Background) → ●



General Settings (Receive)

■ Message Notice & Animation View

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	→ Settings → → General Settings → → Receive → → Message Notice → → Secret Folder → → No Response →
Changing alerts for messages received during handset use	[Start Here] → Settings → → General Settings → → Receive → → Message Notice → → See below Showing New Message Window On Active Screen → → On → Selecting Scrolling Notice Option View Setting → → Select option → Muting Alert Sound Alert Sound → → Off →
Disabling Animation View	→ Settings → → General Settings → → Receive → → Animation View → → Off →

■ Feeling Mail

Hiding graphics above Information window	→ Settings → → General Settings → → Receive → → Link to Feeling → → Idle Screen Info. → → Off →
Disabling illumination	→ Settings → → General Settings → → Receive → → Link to Feeling → → Light → → Off →

Changing vibration pattern

→ Settings → → General Settings →
 → Receive → → Link to Feeling → →
 Vibration Pattern → → Select pattern →

Muting/changing ringtones

[Start Here] → Settings → → General Settings → → Receive → → Link to Feeling → → Ringtone → → See below

Muting Ringer

Switch On/Off → → Off →

Changing Ringtones

Assign Tone → → Select category → →
 Select folder → → Select tone/file →

■ 3D Pictogram

Disabling 3D Pictogram

→ Settings → → General Settings →
 → Receive → → 3D Pictogram → →
 Display Effect → → Disable →

Changing background/speed

[Start Here] → Settings → → General Settings → → Receive → → 3D Pictogram → → See below

Changing Background

Background Color → → Select color or
 Random →

Changing Animation Speed

Display Speed → → Select speed →



S! Mail Settings

Automatic Retrieval

Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually	<p>[Start Here] → Settings → S! Mail Settings → See below</p> <p>In Japan Message DL(Japan) → Manual</p> <p>While Abroad Message DL(Abroad) → Manual</p>
	<p>[Start Here] → Settings → S! Mail Settings → Message DL(Japan) or Message DL(Abroad) → Auto (Specify) → See below</p> <p>Selecting Sender Types Select item (☐/☑) → Y</p> <p>Specifying Numbers/Addresses Individual Address → Select blank entry → Select method → Select/enter number/address → Y</p> <p>Deleting an Individual Address Entry Individual Address → Select entry → Delete → Yes → Y</p> <p>Deleting All Individual Address Entries Individual Address → Select entry → Clear All → Yes → Y</p>
Retrieving specified messages	

Attachments

Limiting S! Mail message size	<p>Settings → S! Mail Settings → Create Msg. Size → 300KB or 1MB</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Images are resized automatically when message size exceeds the limit upon attaching them.
Enabling image auto-resize	<p>Settings → S! Mail Settings → Picture Appearance → Double-Sized</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play	<p>Settings → S! Mail Settings → Auto Play File → Pictures or Sounds → On or Off</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved	<p>Settings → S! Mail Settings → Send File Settings → Attach Only</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting applies to PC Mail as well.



PC Mail Settings

Retrieving complete PC Mail messages	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ● → PC Mail DL → ● → PC Mail DL → ● → All Contents → ●</p>
Retrieving new messages automatically	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ● → ● → Check New Mail → ● → See below</p> <p>Enabling Automatic Retrieval Check New Mail → ● → On → ● → Select account → ● (✓) → ☑ → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting Check New Mail to On may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan. <p>Enabling Automatic Retrieval Abroad Abroad → ● → Enable → ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges. <p>Changing Automatic Retrieval Interval Interval → ● → Select interval → ●</p> <p>Disabling Automatic Retrieval during Specified Time Inactivate Time → ● → Switch On/Off → ● → On → ● → Start Time: → ● → Enter start time → ● → End Time: → ● → Enter end time → ●</p>
Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder	<p>In folder list, select PC Mail folder → ☰ → Retrieve New → ●</p>

Disabling automatic word wrap	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ● → Word wrap → ● → Off → ●</p>
Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ● → ● → PC Mail DL → ● → PC Mail DL → ● → DL All From List → ☰ → See below</p> <p>Selecting Sender Types Select item → ● (☐/✓) → ☑</p> <p>Specifying Addresses Individual Address → ☰ → Select blank entry → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter address → ● → ☑</p> <p>Deleting an Individual Address Entry Individual Address → ☰ → Select entry → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ● → ☑</p> <p>Deleting All Individual Address Entries Individual Address → ☰ → Select entry → ☰ → Clear All → ● → Yes → ● → ☑</p>
Restricting complete message retrieval by size	<p>☰ → Settings → ● → PC Mail Settings → ● → PC Mail DL → ● → Max DL Size → ● → Select account → ● → Select size → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effective when PC Mail DL is set to All Contents or DL All From List.



SMS Settings

Changing Server sent message storage limit

 → **Settings** →  → **SMS Settings** →  → **Expiry Time** →  → **Select option** → 

Changing SMS Server number

Start Here  → **Settings** →  → **SMS Settings** →  → **Message Center** →  → **See below**

Editing

Setting1(Default) to Setting3 →  → **Edit number** → 

- Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.

Deleting

Setting2 or Setting3 →  → **Delete** →  → **Yes** → 

Activating

Setting2 or Setting3 →  → **Set Default** → 

- Activated number moves to **Setting1(Default)** and shifts the others down.

Changing character encoding for composing messages

 → **Settings** →  → **SMS Settings** →  → **Char-code** →  → **Select encoding** → 



Sending Messages

? Cannot enter message text or attach files

- Attachment size affects text size limit. In turn, text size affects attachment size limit.

? Sending failure appears in Information window

- To resend, follow these steps:
Sending failure → [] → **Select message** → [] → [] → [] → [] → []

? Unsent message is not resent automatically

- Auto Resend attempts to send unsent messages automatically up to two times only.

? Set Auto Play File cannot be set

- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Graphic Mail.
- May be unavailable for some files.

? Messaging Settings are not applied

- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

? Cannot set Messaging Settings

- These settings cannot be applied at the same time; select one per message: Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set Auto Play File.

? Signature is not inserted automatically

- Auto Insert is available for S! Mail only.

? Cannot cancel sent messages

- Short messages may not be canceled.
- Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.

? Cannot send PC Mail

- Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:
 [] → **Settings** → [] → **PC Mail Settings** → [] → **PC Mail Account** → [] → **Select account** → [] → **Set Sending** → [] → **Sender Auth.** → [] → **SMTP Auth.** → [] → **User Name or Password** → []
- Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup.




Incoming Messages

? Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.








? A confirmation requesting a reply appears

- To reply, choose **Yes** and press . Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

? Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings

- Responses set in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
 - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
 - The message was filtered as spam
 - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

? Message text appears distorted



- Follow these steps to change encoding:
In message window,  **→ View Settings**   **→ Char-code**   **→ Select option**  

Handling Messages

? Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

? Cannot receive messages

- If  appears, memory is full; delete messages (P.4-24).
- If  appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

? S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

? Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.



Video clips are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.



Internet Services	5-2
Service Basics	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
Using Yahoo! Keitai.....	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
Using PC Site Browser	5-4
Browsing	5-5
Basic Operations	5-5

Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-7
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages....	5-7
RSS Feeds	5-8
Updating Blogs & News.....	5-8
Additional Functions	5-9
Troubleshooting	5-16

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser



Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-22).

Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

Secure Pages

- A confirmation appears before entering and exiting secure pages.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Advanced

- Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)
- Clearing authentication information (And more on P.5-9)
- Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication
- Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on P.5-15)



Using Yahoo! Keitai


Opening Main Menu

Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

1 ➔ Connection starts



Internet Page

- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press .

2 Highlight menu item ➔

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 2 to open additional links.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page]  ➔ Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page]  ➔ Forward ➔ 


Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Internet Page]  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ 

User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔  ➔ 

Playing Media Streams (Streaming)

[Internet Page] Select file ➔ 

- Downloaded content cannot be saved.
- Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Using History

1 ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ➔ History ➔



2 Select record ➔ ➔ Connection starts

- Corresponding page opens.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

Entering URLs Directly

1 ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ➔ Enter URL ➔












2 Enter URL ➔ ➔ Connection starts

- Corresponding page opens.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

Advanced

-   Switching browsers
-  Using previously entered URLs
-  Deleting History records
-  Opening History properties
-  Sorting History records
-  Sending History records via mail (P.5-9)
-  Customizing streaming settings
-  Streaming from Media Player (P.5-12)



Using PC Site Browser

Open PC sites from Yahoo! JAPAN (preset home page).

- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges depending on subscribed price plan.


1   **Yahoo! Keitai**   **PC Site Browser**  






2 **Homepage**  
Connection starts



Internet Page


- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- When a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- To disconnect, press .

3 **Highlight menu item**  

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat  to open additional links.

4   **Yes**   **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page]   **Previous page opens**

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page]   **Forward** 

Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home

[Internet Page]   **Homepage** 



User Authentication

Enter user ID or password  










Using History

In  **History**    **Select record** 

Entering URLs Directly

In  **Enter URL**    **Enter URL** 

Hiding Softkeys



















[Internet Page]   **Convenient Functions**    **Softkey Area**    **Off** 

Browsing in Wideview

[Internet Page] 

- Use Multi Selector according to page orientation.

Advanced

-   Switching browsers
-   Using previously entered URLs
-   Deleting History records
-   Opening History properties
-   Sorting History records
-   Sending History records via mail (P.5-9)
-   Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll
-   Changing scroll unit
-   Hiding PC Site Browser messages (P.5-11)



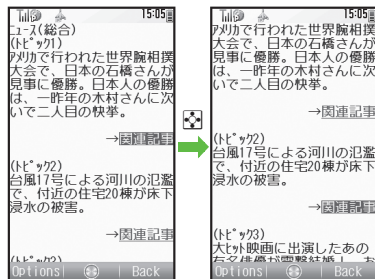
Basic Operations

Page Browsing

Scrolling Pages

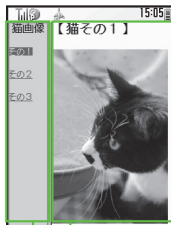
If page content continues beyond view, use to scroll pages.

Long Press to scroll continuously.



Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press to select other frames.



Frames

When pointer navigation is active, point to a frame and press to select it.

Viewing Single Frame

Select frame **Convenient Functions** **Frame In**

■ To return, press .

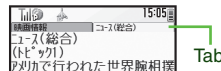
Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

Opening a New Tab

1 On a page, select menu item **Tab Menu**

2 Open in New Tab



Switching Tabs

1 (Long) **Select tab**

• When pointer navigation is active, point to a tab and press to open it.

Closing Tabs

(Long) **Select tab**

Tab Menu **Close Tab or**

Close All Other Tabs

Advanced

- Using Web Search
- Searching current page
- Looking up copied words in dictionaries
- Saving files to Data Folder
- Jumping to page top/bottom
- Changing Font Size
- Zooming specific areas
- Disabling automatic image display/sound playback
- Changing scroll unit (And more on P.5-10 - 5-11)



Selecting Text

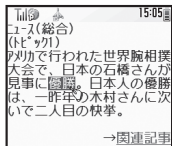
Activate pointer navigation to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy or look up words in dictionaries.

- Text may not be selectable or linked page may open depending on the site or page.
- Follow these steps to use a dictionary:

1 On a page, point to first character (Long)

- Drag Mode is activated.

2 Highlight text range



3





- Text range remains unchanged even when pointer is moved.

4 **Select dictionary**

- Dictionary opens with text inserted.

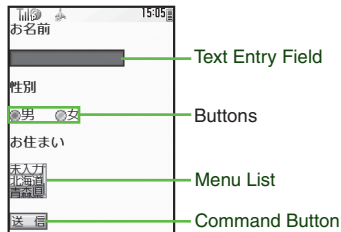
5 **Search** **Select word**

Starting Over

- After , point to first character 
 From 

Additional Page Operations

Enter text or select/execute items.















Text Entry

1 On a page, select text entry field

2 Enter text

- Internet page returns.

Using Entered Text (Input Memory)


- [Internet page] Select text entry field 
       
Input Memory   **Select text** 

Pull-down Menu Item Selection

1 On a page, select menu list field

2 Select item

When Multiple Selection is Supported

- Select items as needed and press .

Page Item Indicators

■ Selection Items

Buttons or boxes appear.

1 On a page, select button or box



- / changes to /

■ Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

1 On a page, select command








Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

Saving Bookmarks

- 1 On a page,  ➔ **Bookmarks**
➔  ➔ **Save** ➔ 
• Save appears only for savable pages.
- 2 Enter/edit title ➔ 
- 3 Save ➔ 




Opening Bookmarks

- 1  ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔  ➔ **Bookmarks** ➔ 







- 2 Select title ➔ 
• Corresponding page opens.

Switching Bookmark Type

After 1,  ➔ **Change List** ➔  ➔
Select type ➔ 

Opening Bookmarks Online

[Internet Page]  ➔ **Bookmarks** ➔
 ➔ **Open List** ➔  ➔ Select title
➔ 

Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

Saving Pages

- 1 On a page,  ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔  ➔ **Save** ➔ 
• Save appears only for savable pages.

- 2 Enter/edit title ➔ 





Opening Saved Pages

- 1  ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔  ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ 




- 2 Select page ➔ 
• Corresponding page opens.

Opening Saved Pages Online

[Internet Page]  ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔
 ➔ **Open List** ➔  ➔ Select page
➔ 

Advanced

-  ● Deleting titles ● Editing titles ● Changing title order ● Sorting titles into folders ● Deleting pages ● Editing page titles ● Changing page order (And more on P.5-12 - 5-13)








Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites. Transmission fees apply.

Subscribing to RSS Feeds

 appears for RSS-compatible sites.

 RSS Indicator
Available for PC Site Browser.

- 1 On a compatible page,  → Register In RSS Feed 
- 2 Select feed  (/) → Complete selection 
- 3 Save 
 - Choose **Yes** to update immediately or **No** and press .

Via RSS Icons

Use RSS icons to subscribe to RSS feeds from sites that are not RSS-compatible. Available for PC Site Browser.

- 1 On a page, select icon 
- 2 Yes  → Save 





Checking Updates

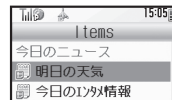
Follow these steps to update all feeds:

- 1  → Yahoo! Keitai 
- 2 PC Site Browser  → RSS Feed 



RSS Feed List

- 3 Reload All  → 
- 4 Yes or No 
- 5 Select feed 








Title List

- 6 Select title 
 - Information appears.

Updating Single RSS Feeds

[RSS Feed List] Select feed  → Reload  →  → Yes or No 

Accessing Source Sites

[Title List] Select title  → Select linked title  → Yes  →  → Yes or No 

Advanced

-  Disabling feed updates
-  Sorting feeds into folders
-  Deleting feeds
-  Sorting feeds
-  Opening feed properties
-  Exchanging feeds with other devices
-  Sending feeds via mail (P.5-14)



Connecting/Browsing	
General	
Switching browsers	On a page, Convenient Functions Change to PC Browser or Change to Y! Keitai This Page or Linked Page Yes or No
Using previously entered URLs	Start Here Yahoo! Keitai See below
	Yahoo! Keitai Enter URL URL Entry Log Select URL
	PC Site Browser PC Site Browser Enter URL URL Entry Log Select URL
History	
Deleting History records	Start Here Yahoo! Keitai History Change to PC Browser or Change to Y! Keitai See below
	One Record Select record Delete Yes
Opening History properties	Yahoo! Keitai History Select record Details
	Yahoo! Keitai History Sort By Domain or By Date

Sending History records via mail

- Yahoo! Keitai** **History** **Select record** **Send URL** **S! Mail or SMS** **Complete message**
- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Memory Operation

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** .

PC Site Browser **PC Site Browser Settings**

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	Yahoo! Keitai Browser Settings Memory Operation Delete Cache Yes
Clearing cookies	Yahoo! Keitai Browser Settings Memory Operation Delete Cookies Yes
Clearing authentication information	Yahoo! Keitai Browser Settings Memory Operation Delete Auth Info Yes



Page Operations

■ Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Using Web Search	On a page, → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → → <i>Web Search</i> → → Enter search text →
Searching current page	On a page, → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → → <i>Search</i> → → Enter search text → • Press to jump to next search result, if any.
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	On a page, → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → → <i>Copy & Search Dict.</i> → → Select first character → → Highlight text range → → Select dictionary → → <i>Search</i> → → Select word, etc. →
Saving files to Data Folder	On a page, → <i>Save Items</i> → → See below
	Files on Page Select file → → <i>Save</i> → → Enter name → → <i>Save here</i> → • Some files are saved automatically. • Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand.
	Background Images <i>Save Background Image</i> → → <i>Save</i> → → Enter name → → <i>Save here</i> →
Using linked info	Dialing Numbers On a page, highlight number → → <i>Call or Video Call</i> →
	Sending Messages On a page, highlight number or mail address → → <i>Create Message</i> → → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → → Complete message →

Copying text	On a page, → <i>Copy Text</i> → → Select first character → → Highlight text range →
Sending URLs via mail	On a page, → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → → <i>Send URL</i> → → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → → Complete message → • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Jumping to page top/bottom	On a page, → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → → <i>Jump In Page</i> → → <i>Page Top or Page Bottom</i> →
Opening function shortcuts	On a page, → <i>Help</i> →
Opening page properties	On a page, → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → → <i>Details</i> → → Select item →
Changing encoding to read garbled text	On a page, → <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Char-code</i> → → Select option →
Handling Flash® files	On a page, → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → → <i>Flash® Menu</i> → → See below Pausing/Playing <i>Pause, Resume or Replay</i> → Selecting Image Quality <i>Quality</i> → → Select option →
Updating page content	On a page, → <i>Reload</i> → • To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above.
■ Yahoo! Keitai	
Changing Font Size	On a page, (Long) to enlarge or (Long) to reduce



■ PC Site Browser

Switching view	On a page, → <i>PC Screen or Small Screen</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page, (Long) to enlarge or (Long) to reduce
Jumping to specific locations	On a page, (Long) → <i>Quick Movement map appears</i> → <i>Select location</i> →
Zooming specific areas	On a page, point to area → (Long) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pointed area is enlarged while is pressed.

Internet Page Settings

■ Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* → .

PC Site Browser → → *PC Site Browser Settings* →

Disabling automatic image display/sound playback	<i>Start Here</i> → → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>Browser Settings</i> → → <i>Downloads</i> → → See below
	<i>Image Display</i> <i>Images</i> → → <i>Do not Show</i> →
	<i>Sound Playback</i> <i>Sounds</i> → → <i>Do not Play</i> →
Changing Font Size	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>Browser Settings</i> → → <i>Font Size</i> → → Select size →

Using pointer navigation	<i>Start Here</i> → → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>Browser Settings</i> → → <i>Cursor Settings</i> → → See below
	<i>Activating</i> <i>Cursor Mode Settings</i> → → <i>Normal Mode</i> →
	<i>Changing Pointer Speed</i> <i>Speed Settings</i> → → Select speed →
Using Memory Card as primary download storage	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>Browser Settings</i> → → <i>Download to</i> → → <i>Prefer Card</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting.

■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing scroll unit	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>Browser Settings</i> → → <i>Scroll Unit</i> → → Select unit →
----------------------	--

■ PC Site Browser

Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → → <i>Scroll Settings</i> → → <i>Page Navigation</i> → → <i>Off</i> →
Changing scroll unit	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → → <i>Scroll Settings</i> → → <i>Scroll Unit</i> → → Select unit →
Hiding PC Site Browser messages	→ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → → <i>Warning Message</i> → → <i>PC Site Browser or Yahoo! Keitai</i> → → <i>Off</i> →



Streaming

Customizing streaming settings	<p>[Start Here] While streaming, Settings </p> <p> See below</p> <p>Changing Playback Size</p> <p>Display Size Select size </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback size may not change depending on file/stream.
	<p>Setting Backlight Status</p> <p>Backlight Select option </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting Normal Settings applies Display Backlight setting.
	<p>Adjusting Sound Effects</p> <p>Sound Effects Select effect </p>
	<p>[Start Here] Media Player Streaming</p> <p> See below</p>
Streaming from Media Player	<p>Resuming from Stopped Point</p> <p>Last Played </p>
	<p>Using Bookmarks</p> <p>Bookmarks Select title </p>
	<p>Using History</p> <p>History Select record </p>

Bookmarks

Deleting titles	<p>[Start Here] Yahoo! Keitai </p> <p>Bookmarks See below</p> <p>One Title</p> <p>Select title Delete Yes </p>
	<p>All Titles</p> <p> Delete All Enter Handset Code </p> <p> Yes </p>
Editing titles	<p> Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks </p> <p> Select title Edit Title: </p> <p> Enter title </p>
Editing bookmarked URLs	<p> Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks </p> <p> Select title Edit URL: </p> <p> Edit </p>
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	<p> Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks </p> <p> Select title Send As Message S! Mail or SMS </p> <p>Complete message </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Changing title order	<p> Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks </p> <p> Select title Change Order </p> <p>Select target location </p>
Opening title properties	<p> Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks </p> <p> Select title Details </p>



Sorting titles into folders	<input type="button" value="Start Here"/> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <input type="button" value=""/> <i>Bookmarks</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → See below
	Creating Folders <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Create Folder</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Enter name → <input type="button" value=""/>
	Moving to Folders Select title → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Move</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Select folder → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Move</i> → <input type="button" value=""/>
	Moving from Folders Select folder → <input type="button" value=""/> → Select title → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Move</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Move</i> → <input type="button" value=""/>
	Renaming Folders Select folder → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Rename</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Enter name → <input type="button" value=""/>
	Deleting All Titles within a Folder Select folder → <input type="button" value=""/> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Delete All</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <input type="button" value=""/> Enter Handset Code → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="button" value=""/>
	Deleting Folders Select folder → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Delete</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Enter Handset Code → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="button" value=""/>

Saved Pages

Deleting pages	<input type="button" value="Start Here"/> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Saved Pages</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → See below
	One Page Select page → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Delete</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="button" value=""/>
Editing page titles	All Pages <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Delete All</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Enter Handset Code → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="button" value=""/>
	<input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Saved Pages</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Select page → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Rename</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Enter title → <input type="button" value=""/>
Changing page order	<input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Saved Pages</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Select page → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Change Order</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <input type="button" value=""/> Select target location → <input type="button" value=""/>
Opening page properties	<input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Saved Pages</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Select page → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Details</i> → <input type="button" value=""/>
Switching page list view	<input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>Saved Pages</i> → <input type="button" value=""/> → Select page → <input type="button" value=""/> → <i>List View or Preview View</i> → <input type="button" value=""/>



RSS Feeds

Disabling feed updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Restrict Update → ●
Sorting feeds into folders	<p><small>Start Here</small> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p>Creating Folders</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Create Folder → ● → Enter name → ● <p>Moving to Folders</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Move → ● → Select folder → ● → Move → ● <p>Renaming Folders</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select folder → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Rename → ● → Enter name → ● <p>Deleting Folders</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select folder → ☰ → Delete → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●
	<p><small>Start Here</small> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p>One Entry</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select feed → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ● <p>All Entries</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Alternatively, perform <i>Delete RSS Feed List</i> in Memory Operation (PC Site Browser Settings) to delete all feeds.
	<p><small>Start Here</small> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p>
	<p><small>Start Here</small> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p>
Deleting feeds	<p><small>Start Here</small> ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p>One Entry</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select feed → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ● <p>All Entries</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Alternatively, perform <i>Delete RSS Feed List</i> in Memory Operation (PC Site Browser Settings) to delete all feeds.

Sorting feeds

● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Sort → ● → Select option → ●

Opening feed properties

● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Details → ●

Exchanging feeds with other devices

Start Here ● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Manage RSS Feed → ● → See below

Exporting All Feeds

Export All → ● → Select location → ●

Importing (Adding Feeds)

Import → ● → Select file → ● → As New Items → ● → Yes or No → ● → Yes or No → ●

Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds)

Import → ● → Select file → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ● → Yes or No → ● → Yes or No → ●

Sending feeds via mail

● → Yahoo! Keitai → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → As Message → ● → Complete message → ☺



Security Settings

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➤ [] .

PC Site Browser ➤ [] ➤ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➤ []

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	[] ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ [] ➤ Browser Settings ➤ [] ➤ Security Settings ➤ [] ➤ Manufacture Number ➤ [] ➤ Off ➤ []
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	[] ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ [] ➤ Browser Settings ➤ [] ➤ Security Settings ➤ [] ➤ Send ➤ [] ➤ Referer ➤ [] ➤ Not Send ➤ []
Enabling/disabling cookies	[] ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ [] ➤ Browser Settings ➤ [] ➤ Security Settings ➤ [] ➤ Cookies ➤ [] ➤ Select option ➤ []
Selecting script execution option	[] ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ [] ➤ Browser Settings ➤ [] ➤ Security Settings ➤ [] ➤ Script Settings ➤ [] ➤ Select option ➤ []
Hiding confirmations before entering/exiting secure pages	[] ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ [] ➤ Browser Settings ➤ [] ➤ Security Settings ➤ [] ➤ Secure Prompt ➤ [] ➤ Do not Show ➤ []
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	[] ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ [] ➤ Browser Settings ➤ [] ➤ Security Settings ➤ [] ➤ Root Certificates ➤ [] ➤ Select certificate ➤ []

Changing validity of entered user ID/password

[] ➤ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➤ [] ➤ **Browser Settings** ➤ [] ➤ **Security Settings** ➤ [] ➤ **Keep Auth Info** ➤ [] ➤ **Select option** ➤ []

- **Per Browsing** retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. **On** retains such authentication information even after turning handset off.
- Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.

Enabling/disabling Ajax (for asynchronous communication)

[] ➤ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➤ [] ➤ **Browser Settings** ➤ [] ➤ **Security Settings** ➤ [] ➤ **Restrict Ajax** ➤ [] ➤ **Select option** ➤ []

Resetting

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➤ [] .

PC Site Browser ➤ [] ➤ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➤ []

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)

[] ➤ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➤ [] ➤ **Browser Settings** ➤ [] ➤ **Initialized Browser** ➤ [] ➤ **Enter Handset Code** ➤ [] ➤ **Yes** ➤ []

Restoring default handset settings

[] ➤ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➤ [] ➤ **Browser Settings** ➤ [] ➤ **Reset Settings** ➤ [] ➤ **Enter Handset Code** ➤ [] ➤ **Yes** ➤ []



Connecting/Browsing

? What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

Page Operations

? Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

? Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try *Tiny* font size.
- Text may overlap when Zoom Factor is used; adjust scale.

? Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet

- When switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser (☐ appears), additional function activation is disabled; close either browser and retry.



Digital TV	6-2
Basics	6-2
Area Setup.....	6-4
Watching TV	6-5
Obtaining Program Information.....	6-7
TV Player	6-8
Recording Programs.....	6-8
Playing Recorded Programs.....	6-9

TV Timer	6-10
TV Timer & TV Recording Timer	6-10
Additional Functions	6-11
Troubleshooting	6-16

6

Digital TV



Basics

831SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming.

TV Listing (EPG) & Program Info

Find program channels and times for specified area or open program details via current channel's schedule.

View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

Record & Play Back Shows

Record current program on Memory Card for later viewing on handset.

Reserve TV Programs

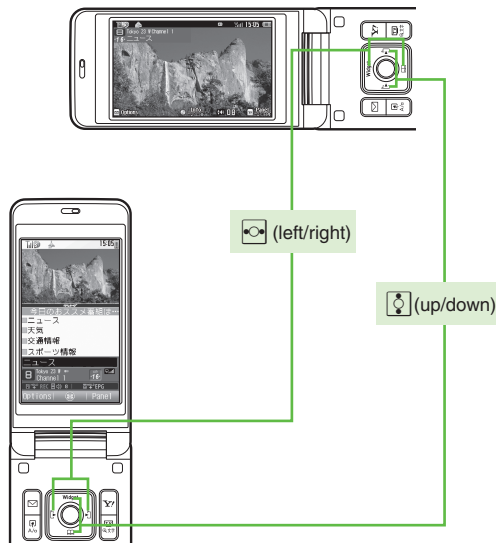
Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

Landscape Position

Enjoy widescreen TV images in landscape position.

- Use  according to TV orientation.

(Key assignments change as follows.)



Precautions

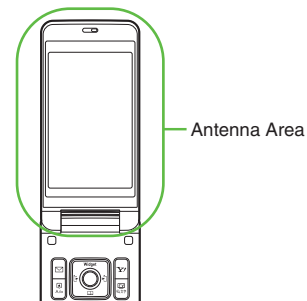
- 831SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programming may not be viewable or record properly when:
 - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
 - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
 - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
 - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
 - Near railroad tracks or highways
 - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable

Recording Precautions

- Saved files cannot be forwarded or attached to messages.
- 831SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

Digital TV Antenna

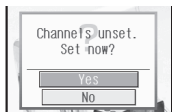
TV Antenna is located behind Display. Move handset to find best reception.



Area Setup

When activating TV for the first time, follow these steps to set up channels by area:

1 



• Setup confirmation appears.

2 Yes  



3 Select region  


4 Select prefecture   
Select locality  



• After setup, channel list appears.

5 









• To watch TV, select **Digital TV** and press .

Watching TV without Completing Area Setup

In , **Other Region**  










Adding Reception Areas

    **Set Channels**  

Change Area    **Select Area** 

  **Set Area Info**    **From** 

Advanced

-   Switching reception Areas
-  Renaming Areas
-  Changing/disabling  function
-  Editing channels
-  Deleting all channels in Area
-  Adding new channels to Area
-  Updating all channels in the Area (P.6-11)



Watching TV

Complete Area setup first.

1



TV Window

2 Use Keypad to select a channel

- Use to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.

3

➔ Yes ➔ ➔ TV ends

Changing Display Size/TV Orientation [TV Window]

- Press repeatedly to toggle view between Full Screen, Normal (Portrait), Enlarge (Portrait) and Normal (Landscape).
- In portrait position, Data Broadcast text appears below TV image.

Incoming Calls

- Press to answer calls.
- When S! Circle Talk request arrives, press to start S! Circle Talk.

Incoming Messages

- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press to open messages.

Key Assignments

Open Options Menu	
Toggle Panel On/Off	
Activate TV/Change Area	
Volume Control	
Toggle Display Size	

Panel Description



1 Area name	5 Station name
2 Channel key	6 Signal strength*
3 Channel	7 Sound Channel
4 Program name	8 Volume



*The more bars the better.
Indicator position varies with display content, etc.

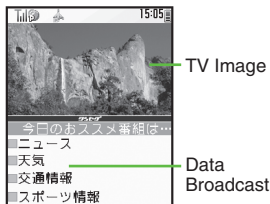
Advanced

- Viewing key assignments
- Searching current program on the Internet
- Saving current channel
- Adjusting brightness
- Changing panel pattern
- Customizing viewing options for landscape position (And more on P.6-11 - 6-12)



Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In portrait position, Data Broadcast text appears below TV image. Use  to select an item and press  to access program-related information and interactive services.



Data Broadcast Window

Data Broadcast Fees

- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.










Enlarging Specific Image Portion

In landscape position, temporarily enlarge a portion of widescreen image. May be unavailable depending on viewing style.








1 In TV window, - (Long)



• Key Assignments:

		
Upper left	Upper center	Upper right
		
Left	Center	Right
		
Lower left	Lower center	Lower right

Advanced

-   Changing display view
-  Returning to initial window
-  Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts
-  Hiding Network connection confirmation
-  Sending/hiding Location Information
-  Sending manufacture number and other information (P.6-12)



Obtaining Program Information

Find program channels and times for specified area or open program details via current channel's schedule.

TV Listing	Start EPG S! Application to find program channels and times for specified area
Program Info	Open program details via current channel's schedule; set Reservations to record shows or activate TV

TV Listing (Japanese)

1 In TV window, (Long)

- EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
- When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Program Info

1 In TV window, ➔ *OperateProgram* ➔

2 *Program Info.* ➔



Program Info Window

3 **Select program** ➔ • To return, press twice.

Setting Recording Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program ➔ ➔

- Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

Setting TV Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program ➔ ➔ *Programming* ➔



Recording Programs

Record current program on Memory Card.
When Small Light flashes yellow, reception is poor; change location to where Small Light illuminates green.

1 In TV window, (Long) ➔ Recording starts




Recording Window

- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.

2 (Long) ➔ Recording ends

Recording Programs in Portrait Position [TV Window] (Long)

- To end, Long Press  while recording.

Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video

- Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted
- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Advanced

-  ● Recording programs without Data Broadcasts ● Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card (P.6-14)

Playing Recorded Programs

1 In TV window, ➔ TV Player ➔



Video List

-  indicates the file is unplayable.

2 Select file ➔












Playback Window



- Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

3 (Long) ➔ Playback stops

Playback Operations

Adjust volume or temporarily enlarge a portion of widescreen image following the same operations used while watching TV.


Fast Forward	 ¹
Rewind	 ^{1, 2}
Skip Forward	
Skip Backward	
Pause ³	 ( in portrait position)
Split File	 (Long)
Set Marker	
Toggle Panel On/Off	

¹Each press increases speed. To resume normal playback, press  ( in portrait position).

²Long Press to replay. (Available when no Marker is saved.)

³In pause, use  to reverse/advance frame.

Advanced

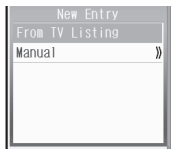
-  ● Splitting files by specifying a time point
- Playing files repeatedly
- Playing split files
- Checking memory status
- Renaming files
- Deleting files
- Opening file properties
- Playing files with Markers (And more on P.6-14)



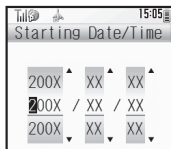
TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

- 1** In TV window, → **Rec. Operation** → → **Reservation List** →

- 2** → **New Entry** →



- 3** **Manual** → → **Programming or Recording** →



- 4** Enter start date/time →
→ Enter end date/time →

- 5** **Channel:** → → **Select channel** → →
- If a confirmation appears, read the message and press .

Setting Timer via EPG

After , **From TV Listing** →

- Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

Timer Recording Precautions

Confirm target channel reception; keep handset open.

- Insert a Memory Card.
- End the current operations.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory.

At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after the set duration.



Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

While Using Another Function

- TV activates via Multi Job and target program/recording starts. However, if Multi Job cannot activate in the current state, TV remains off, or the current function ends automatically (unsaved images, messages, Phone Book entries, etc. may be deleted). End all active functions/applications before Timer time.

Advanced

- Opening/editing/deleting Timer details
- Opening/deleting Timer log
- Customizing TV Alarm settings
- Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer (P.6-15)



Area & Channel	
Switching reception Areas	While watching TV,
Renaming Areas	While watching TV,
Changing/disabling function	While watching TV,
	Toggle All Receivable Channels By Manual
Editing channels	While watching TV,
	Switching Channel Positions <i>Flip</i>
Deleting all channels in Area	Deleting Channels <i>Delete</i>
	While watching TV,
Adding new channels to Area	While watching TV,
Updating all channels in the Area	While watching TV,

Watching	
Viewing key assignments	While watching TV,
Searching current program on the Internet	While watching TV,
Saving current channel	While watching TV,
Adjusting brightness	While watching TV,
Selecting sound option	While watching TV,
Changing panel pattern	While watching TV in portrait position,
Customizing viewing options for landscape position	While watching TV in landscape position,
	Showing Indicators Always <i>Display Icon</i>
	Disabling Partial Image Enlargement <i>Enlarge Point</i>
	Using Portrait Position Key Assignments <i>Key Direction</i>



Switching One Seg service	While watching TV, [OK] → Set Channels → [OK] → Select Serv. Station → [OK] → Select service → [OK] • Available for programs with multiple services.
Listening to audio from Speaker	While watching TV, [OK] → Advanced → [OK] → Sound Output → [OK] → Loudspeaker → [OK]
Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time	While watching TV, [OK] → Advanced → [OK] → Auto Exit → [OK] → Auto Exit Time → [OK] → Select time → [OK]
Disabling auto shut-off when handset is closed	While watching TV, [OK] → Advanced → [OK] → Auto Exit → [OK] → Close Action → [OK] → Watch TV → [OK]
Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions	[Start Here] → [OK] → TV → [OK] → Settings → [OK] → Calls & Alarms → [OK] → See below
	Showing Alarm Notice Alarm → [OK] → Alarm Notice → [OK]
	Showing Calls or SI Circle Talk Requests Select item → [OK] → Notice a Call → [OK]
	Showing New Message Window Incoming Message → [OK] → Calls & Alarms → [OK]

Data Broadcast

Changing display view	While viewing Data Broadcast in portrait position, [OK] → Set Broadcast Data → [OK] → Change View (Data) → [OK] • To return to TV window, press [TV].
Returning to initial window	While viewing Data Broadcast in portrait position, [OK] → Set Broadcast Data → [OK] → Back to Top → [OK]
Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts	[Start Here] While watching TV, [OK] → Set Broadcast Data → [OK] → Delete StationData → [OK] → See below
	Deleting by Station Select station → [OK] → Delete → [OK] → Yes → [OK] Deleting All [OK] → Delete All → [OK] → Enter Handset Code → [OK] → Yes → [OK]
Hiding Network connection confirmation	While watching TV, [OK] → Set Broadcast Data → [OK] → Notify Connection → [OK] → Off → [OK]
Sending/hiding Location Information	[Start Here] While watching TV, [OK] → Set Broadcast Data → [OK] → Location → [OK] → See below
	Sending Always On → [OK] Hiding Always Off → [OK]
Sending manufacture number and other information	While watching TV, [OK] → Set Broadcast Data → [OK] → Manufacture Number → [OK] → On → [OK]



TV Link (Japanese)

Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information	<p>While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.
Using TV links	<p> </p> <p>Opening TV Links Select link </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connection fees may apply. <p>Opening Properties Select link </p>
Deleting TV links	<p> </p> <p>One Entry Select link </p> <p>All Entries </p>

Subtitle & Sound

Changing subtitle settings	<p> While watching TV, Subtitle/Sound </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> May be unavailable depending on program content or viewing style (TV orientation, etc.).
	<p>Showing Subtitles Always <i>Display Subtitle</i> </p>
	<p>Hiding Subtitles Always <i>Display Subtitle</i> </p>
	<p>Changing Subtitle Language <i>Subtitle Language</i> </p>
Changing sound settings	<p> While watching TV, Subtitle/Sound </p>
	<p>Selecting Sound Option <i>Sound Type</i> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available when multiple sounds are supported.
	<p>Listening to Sub Language <i>Sound Channel</i> </p>
	<p>Listening to Main & Sub Languages <i>Sound Channel</i> </p>



Recording

Recording programs without Data Broadcasts	While watching TV, → <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> → → <i>Set Recording</i> → → <i>Image Only</i> →
Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card	While watching TV, → <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> → → <i>Image Location</i> → → <i>Memory Card</i> →

Recorded Programs

■ Playback

Splitting files by specifying a time point	During playback, → <i>Split File</i> → → <i>Select Point</i> → → → <i>Specify point</i> → → <i>Confirm</i> →
Playing files repeatedly	→ <i>TV</i> → → <i>TV Player</i> → → → <i>Playback Pattern</i> → → <i>Repeat</i> →
Playing split files	→ <i>TV</i> → → <i>TV Player</i> → → <i>Select split file</i> → → <i>Select file</i> →

■ Managing

Checking memory status	→ <i>TV</i> → → <i>TV Player</i> → → → <i>Memory Remaining</i> →
Renaming files	→ <i>TV</i> → → <i>TV Player</i> → → <i>Select file</i> → → <i>Rename</i> → → <i>Enter name</i> →

Deleting files

[Start Here] → *TV* → → *TV Player* → → → *See below*

Single Files

Select file → → *Delete* → → *Yes* →

All Files

→ *Delete All* → → *Enter Handset Code* → → *Yes* →

Opening file properties

→ *TV* → → *TV Player* → → *Select file* → → *Details* →

Markers

Playing files with Markers

[Start Here] During playback → *See below*

Skipping between Markers

(Long) or (Long)

Moving to Specific Markers

[0] - [9]

Using Marker List

[Start Here] During playback, → *Set Marker* → → *Marker List* → → *See below*

Starting Playback

Select number →

Deleting a Marker

Select number → → *Delete* →

Deleting All Markers

→ *Delete All* → → *Yes* →



TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

Opening/editing/ deleting Timer details	<p>(Start Here) While watching TV, \Rightarrow <i>Rec. Operation</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Reservation List</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow See below</p> <p>Opening Entries Select entry \Rightarrow </p> <hr/> <p>Editing Entries Select entry \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Edit</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Edit</i> \Rightarrow </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some entries may not be edited depending on the content. <hr/> <p>Deleting Entries Select entry \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Delete</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Yes</i> \Rightarrow </p>
Opening/deleting Timer log	<p>(Start Here) While watching TV, \Rightarrow <i>Rec. Operation</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Reservation List</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow See below</p> <p>Opening Timer Log Select record \Rightarrow </p> <hr/> <p>Playing Recorded Programs Select record \Rightarrow </p> <hr/> <p>Deleting Records Select record \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Yes</i> \Rightarrow </p>
Customizing TV Alarm settings	<p>(Start Here) While watching TV, \Rightarrow <i>Advanced</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>TV Alarm</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow See below</p> <p>Changing TV Alarm Time <i>Alarm Time</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select time \Rightarrow </p> <hr/> <p>Disabling Tone/Vibration/Small Light <i>Tone, Vibration or Light</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Off</i> \Rightarrow </p> <hr/> <p>Changing Duration <i>Duration</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select time \Rightarrow </p>
Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer	<p> \Rightarrow <i>TV</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>TV Reserve Prior</i> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow <i>Off</i> \Rightarrow </p>



Watching

? TV won't activate

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Cannot watch TV

- Reception may be poor; change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
- Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information.
- TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

? Area setup does not complete correctly

- Perform **Update All** in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

Recording

? Ringtone does not sound as set while recording

- When a Chaku-Uta[®] file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

TV Recording Timer

? *Could not start recording.* appeared as recording result

- Recording failed due to low battery/memory, active function, etc.

? *Recording aborted.* appeared as recording result

- Recording was interrupted due to low memory, Memory Card removal, etc.



Camera	7-2
Getting Started	7-2
Photo Camera	7-4
Capturing Still Images	7-4
Video Camera	7-5
Recording Video	7-5
Review	7-6
Opening Saved Files	7-6

Shooting Modes	7-7
Using Shooting Modes	7-7
Editing Images	7-9
Picture Editor.....	7-9
Composite	7-13
Printing	7-14
Printing Images	7-14
Additional Functions	7-15
Troubleshooting	7-18

7

Camera & Imaging



Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

Various Image Sizes

Select small sizes to send captured images/recorded video via S! Mail*; select larger sizes for higher resolutions.

Auto Focus

Measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.

Multiple Shooting Modes

Apply effect or add frame, capture sequential/panoramic or scan images.

Review

Open/play last saved mobile camera file quickly; access older files as needed.

*May not be delivered as sent depending on image/recording size or recipient device.

Precautions

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Shutter Click

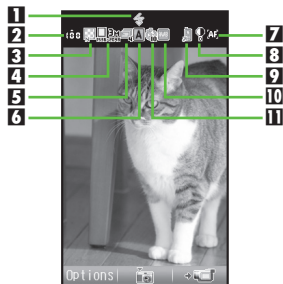
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.



Display Indicators

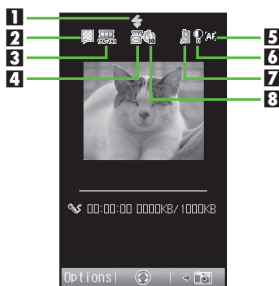
The following indicators appear at the top of Display.

Photo Viewfinder



1	Mobile Light	7	Focus
2	Memory	8	Exposure
3	Picture Quality	9	Save to
4	Picture Size	10	White Balance
5	Continuous Shoot	11	Self-timer
6	Scene		

Video Viewfinder



1	Mobile Light	5	Focus
2	Video Quality	6	Exposure
3	Record Size	7	Save to
4	Record Time	8	Self-timer

Advanced

Opening Help (P.7-15)



Capturing Still Images

1 → Camera →

2 Photo Camera →

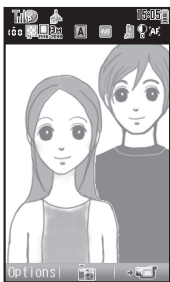


Photo Viewfinder

3 Frame image on Display →

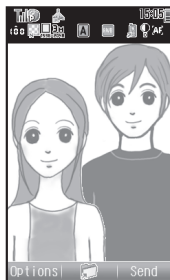


Image Save Window

- Shutter clicks and the captured image appears. (To discard file and start over, press .)
- 4
- Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
 - Open saved images via Review or Data Folder.
- 5 → Camera shuts down

Sending Captured Images via S! Mail

After , → Complete message →

- After pressing , message size confirmation appears depending on image size or handset settings; select message size limit and press . Images may be resized automatically.
- To make selection the default setting hereafter, press to check **From now on too** check-box.

Sending Captured Images at High Speed via Infrared

After , (Long) → Yes →

- Set recipient device to ready beforehand.

Pre-Image Capture Operations

Zoom In/Out	
Toggle Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
Change Image Size	
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	
Open Help	

Advanced

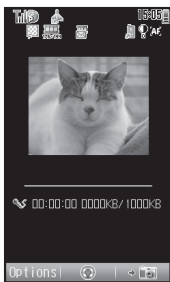
- Activating Mobile Light ● Adjusting brightness ● Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots ● Changing shutter click sound ● Changing image size ● Changing mode according to lighting or subject ● Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions (And more on P.7-15)



Recording Video

1 ➔ **Camera** ➔

2 **Video Camera** ➔

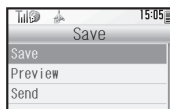


Video Viewer

3 **Frame image on Display** ➔

- Recording starts after a tone. (To start over, press .)

4



Video Save Menu

- Recording stops with a tone. (To discard file and start over, press .)

5 **Save** ➔

- Video is saved. (Viewer returns.)
- Play saved video via Review, Data Folder or Media Player.

6 ➔ **Camera shuts down**

Pre-Recording Operations

Zoom In/Out	
Toggle Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
Change Record Size	
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	
Open Help	

Playing Unsaved Video

In , **Preview** ➔

Sending Recorded Video via S! Mail

In , **Send** ➔ ➔ **Save and Send**

➔ ➔ **Complete message** ➔

- Message creation confirmation appears depending on file size; choose **Yes** and press to proceed. (Choose **No** to cancel attachment.)
- To make selection the default setting hereafter, press to check **From now on too** check-box.
- May not be delivered as sent depending on recording size or recipient device.

Incoming Calls

- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.

When Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Advanced

- Activating Mobile Light Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots (And more on P.7-15)
- Changing recording time/size Enlarging Viewfinder size Recording video without sound (And more on P.7-16)



Opening Saved Files

Opening Last Saved File

Open/play last saved mobile camera file; access older files as needed.

- 1 ➔ **Camera** ➔
- 2 **Review** ➔



Review Window

- To end Review, press .

Enlarging Images

After ,

Pausing/Resuming Video

After , (press repeatedly to pause/resume)

Opening Help

[Review Window]

Accessing Older Files

- 1 In Review window,



Review File List

- File list appears; press repeatedly to toggle lists.

- 2 **Select file** ➔

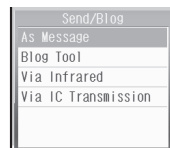
- File opens/plays.

Sending Images

Send images to blogs, etc. via mail. Infrared and other options can also be used for sending images to other devices. To send images to blogs, complete Blog Setting beforehand.

- 1 In Review file list, select image ➔

- 2 **Send/Blog** ➔



- 3 **Select option** ➔

- Follow onscreen instructions.



Using Shooting Modes

May be unavailable depending on selected image/recording size.

Self-timer


1 In Photo/Video Viewfinder,




2 Select time →



3 Frame image on Display →

- After selected time elapses, captured image appears or recording starts.
- To stop recording, press .
- For more, see operation descriptions on P.7-4 or P.7-5.

Releasing Shutter during Countdown

After ,

Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown

- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Available Modes:

4 Pictures	Capture four separate images with Index Image
9 Pictures	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
Overlapped	Capture five images to create a composite image

1 In Photo Viewfinder, → Modes →




Mode Menu

2 Continuous Shoot →

3 Select mode → → Select speed →

4 Frame image on Display →

- After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
- When shooting speed is set to **Manual** (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat  for each frame.

5

6 All Pictures →

- All captured images are saved.

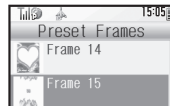
Saving the Selected Image

After ,  (select image) →  → Selected Picture → 

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)


1 In mode menu, Add Frame →

2 Preset Frames →



3 Select frame →

4 Frame image on Display →

- Captured image appears.
- Press  to save image. (Viewfinder returns.)

Using Frames in Data Folder

In , Data Folder →  → Select frame →  → 




Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

- 1 In mode menu, **Camera Effects** ➔ 



- 2 Select effect ➔ 

- 3 Frame image on Display ➔ 

- Captured image appears.
- Press  to save image. (Viewfinder returns.)

Panorama Picture (Photo Camera)

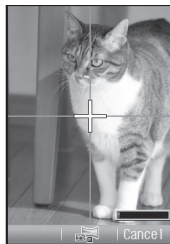
- 1 In mode menu, **Panorama/Scanner** ➔ 





Panorama/Scanner Menu

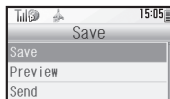
- 2 **Panorama Picture On** ➔ 

- 3 **Frame image on Display** ➔ 



- Move handset slowly to keep  aligned with either of yellow lines.
- Image is captured automatically when the bar () turns blue.

- 4 



Save Menu

- Image is captured and Save menu opens.

- 5 **Save** ➔ 

- Image is saved.

Checking Unsaved Images

In 5, **Preview** ➔ 

Scanning Images (Photo Camera)

- 1 In Panorama/Scanner menu, **Scanner** ➔ 

- 2 Select size ➔  ➔ **Frame image on Display** ➔ 



- Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture. (Refer to indicators on Display.)

- 3 

- Image is captured and Save menu opens.


- 4 **Save** ➔ 

- Image is saved.

Checking Unsaved Images

In 4, **Preview** ➔ 

Advanced

-   Changing Panorama settings  Changing Panorama image preview method (P.7-16)

Picture Editor

Picture Editor Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image
Frame	Add Frame to images
Paste	Add text/dates to images
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

Basics Operations

1 → **Data Folder** →

2 **Pictures** → → **Select image** →

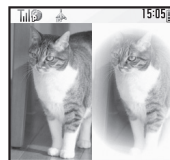
3 → **Edit** →

4 **Picture Editor** →



Picture Editor Menu

5 **Select effect** → → **Edit**



• To start over, press .

6 **When finished**,



7 **Save as New** →

• To overwrite, select **Overwrite** and press . (Omit .)

8 **Enter name** → → **Save here** →

Canceling Effects

After , **Undo** →

■ To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** and press .

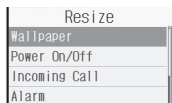


Changing Image Size

Select from preset sizes or crop image.

Resize to Preset Size

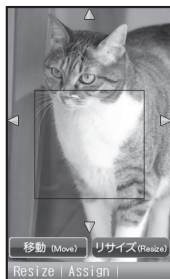
- In Picture Editor menu, **Resize** ➔



Resize Window

- Select size ➔

- Specify display area



- Omit ③ if there is no rectangle on the image.

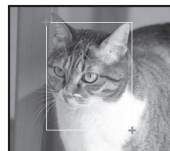
- Editing is completed.

Zooming In/Out

After , ➔ ➔ ④

Cropping Images

- In Resize window, **Cut** ➔
- Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop ➔



- Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop ➔

- Editing is completed.

Specifying Display Area

After , ➔ ④

Zooming In/Out

After , ➔ ➔ ④

Advanced

- Using additional editing options (P.7-16 - 7-17)

Applying Visual Effects

Render in sepia tones or add blur, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *Retouch* ➔



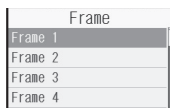
- 2 Select effect ➔



- 3
 - Editing is completed.

Adding Frames

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *Frame* ➔



- 2 Select frame ➔



- 3
 - Editing is completed.



Face Arrange

Make faces smiley, sad, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Face Arrange** ➔



Face Arrange Menu

- 2 Select type ➔

- 3

- Editing is completed.

Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

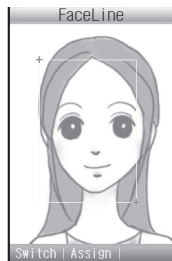
- 1 In Face Arrange menu, ➔

- A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

- 2 Move + to top left of face

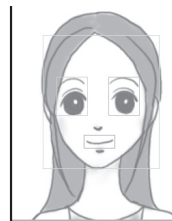


- 3 Move + to bottom right of face



- 4

- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.



- 5 ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Save here** ➔

- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.



Composite

Composite Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Split Picture	Combine up to four images into one
Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one

Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text
Standard	Apply to other images

1 ➔ **Data Folder** ➔

2 **Pictures** ➔ ➔ **Select image** ➔

3 ➔ **Edit** ➔

4 **Composite** ➔

5 **Merge Panorama** ➔



• File selected in 2 is set as left image.

6 **<Empty>** ➔ ➔ **Select image** ➔

7 **EFFECT** ➔ ➔ **Select effect** ➔

• Editing is completed.

8 **When finished,**



• Merged image appears.

9

10 **Enter name** ➔ ➔ **Save here** ➔

Changing Images

After 7, select image ➔ ➔ ➔

Select image ➔

Switching Image Positions

After 8,

Advanced

• Combining reduced images (P.7-17)



Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

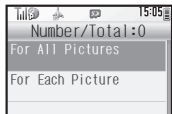
7

Camera & Imaging

1 → **Settings** → →

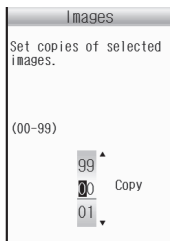
2 **Memory Card** → → **DPOF** →

3 **Number of Copies** →



4 **For Each Picture** → → **Select folder** →

5 **Select image** →



6 **Enter a number of copies to print** →

• For more settings, repeat 5 - 6.

7

Applying a Number to All Images

In 4, **For All Pictures** → → Enter a number of copies to print →

Canceling Specified Number

In 5, enter 00 → →

Viewing Current Print Settings

In 3, **Check Settings** →

Advanced

Changing print settings (P.7-17)

Photo Camera & Video Camera

■ General

Opening Help	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, → Help → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press to toggle Help window for key assignments and indicator descriptions.
--------------	---

■ Capturing

Activating Mobile Light	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, → Mobile Light → → On or Automatic → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low Light is also available for still image capture. Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
Adjusting brightness	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, → Shooting Settings or Record Settings → → Exposure → → Adjust level
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, → Shooting Settings or Record Settings → → Focus Setting → → Macro →
Adjusting focus manually	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, → Shooting Settings or Record Settings → → Focus Setting → → Manual Focus → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To readjust focus, press .
Locking focus	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Frame subject in center of Display first. To start over, press again.
Changing image quality	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, → Picture Quality or Video Quality → → Select quality →

■ Saving

Activating automatic saving	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, → Settings → → Auto Save → → On →
Changing save location	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, → Settings → → Save Pictures to or Save Videos to → → Select location →

Photo Camera

■ General

Changing shutter click sound	In Photo Viewfinder, → Settings → → Shutter Sound → → Select pattern → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot, Panorama Picture and Scanner are fixed.
Hiding indicators	In Photo Viewfinder, → Settings → → Display Indicators → → Hide Indicators →
Changing send option assigned to	In Photo Viewfinder, → Settings → → Set Send Key → → Short press or Long press → → Select option → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Change send option separately for each key press method.

■ Capturing

Changing image size	In Photo Viewfinder, → Picture Size → → Select size →
Changing mode according to lighting or subject	In Photo Viewfinder, → Scene → → Select mode →
Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions	In Photo Viewfinder, → Shooting Settings → → White Balance → → Select mode →



■ Panorama Picture

Changing Panorama settings	(Start Here) In Photo Viewfinder, Settings Panorama Settings See below
	Hiding Guides Assisting Lines Off
	Locking Display Brightness during Image Capture AE-Lock Enable
Changing Panorama image preview method	In Panorama preview, Manual Scroll or Full Image

Video Camera

■ Recording

Changing recording time/size	In Video Viewfinder, Record Time/Size For Message or Extended Video Select size
Enlarging Viewfinder size	In Video Viewfinder, Display Size Enlarge
Recording video without sound	In Video Viewfinder, Microphone Off

Editing Images

■ Picture Editor

(Start Here) **Data Folder** **Pictures** **Select file** **Edit** **Picture Editor** See below

Changing Text/Outline Color

Paste **Select text color** **Select outline color**

Adding Text

Paste **Free Text** **Enter text** **Move text**

Adding Dates

Paste **Date** **Move date**

Adding Stamps

Stamp **Select stamp** **Move stamp**

Correcting Image Parameters

Correction **Select type**

Rotating Images

Rotate **Select type**

Converting File Format

File Format **File Format** **Select format**

- Changing file format may affect file size/image quality.
- To return to Picture Editor menu, press .

Using additional editing options



Using additional editing options	<p>Start Here <input type="checkbox"/> → Data Folder <input type="checkbox"/> → Pictures <input type="checkbox"/> → Select file <input type="checkbox"/> → Edit <input type="checkbox"/> → Picture Editor <input type="checkbox"/> → See below</p>
	<p>Changing File Size File Format <input type="checkbox"/> → File Size <input type="checkbox"/> → Select size <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changing file size may affect image quality. To return to Picture Editor menu, press <input type="button" value="ESC"/>.

Composite

Combining reduced images	<p>Start Here <input type="checkbox"/> → Data Folder <input type="checkbox"/> → Pictures <input type="checkbox"/> → Select file <input type="checkbox"/> → Edit <input type="checkbox"/> → Composite <input type="checkbox"/> → See below</p>
	<p>Creating Split Picture SplitPicture 240x400 or SplitPicture 240x320 <input type="checkbox"/> → <Empty> <input type="checkbox"/> → Select file <input type="checkbox"/> → When finished, <input type="button" value="Y"/> → Enter name <input type="checkbox"/> → Save here <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Repeat from selecting <Empty> as needed.
	<p>Previewing Split Picture While creating Split Picture, <input type="button" value="Z"/> → View Composite <input type="checkbox"/></p>
	<p>Changing Images While creating Split Picture, select image <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="button" value="Z"/> → Select another <input type="checkbox"/></p>
	<p>Deleting Images While creating Split Picture, select image <input type="checkbox"/> → Remove <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes <input type="checkbox"/></p>

DPOF

Changing print settings	<p>Start Here <input type="checkbox"/> → Settings <input type="checkbox"/> → Connectivity <input type="checkbox"/> → Memory Card <input type="checkbox"/> → DPOF <input type="checkbox"/> → See below</p>
	<p>Adding Dates to Prints Settings <input type="checkbox"/> → Add Date <input type="checkbox"/> → On <input type="checkbox"/></p>
	<p>Creating an Index Print Settings <input type="checkbox"/> → Index Print <input type="checkbox"/> → On <input type="checkbox"/></p>
	<p>Resetting Reset Settings <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes <input type="checkbox"/></p>



Mobile Camera

? Mobile camera won't activate/ shuts down automatically

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Cannot use Auto Save

- Auto Save is not available when Save Pictures to is set to **Ask Each Time**.

Editing Images

? Cannot save/send edited images

- Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

DPOF

? Cannot specify print settings properly

- If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.



Media Player	8-2
Media Basics	8-2
Music	8-4
Playing Music.....	8-4
Video	8-5
Playing Video.....	8-5

Playlists	8-6
Using Playlists	8-6
S! Appli	8-7
Using S! Applications	8-7
Additional Functions	8-8
Troubleshooting	8-13

8

Media Player & S! Applications



Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 831SH.

- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player directly.
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Music File Support

My Music

(Handset/Memory Card)
Downloads/Transferred Files

SD AUDIO

(Memory Card)
Transferred SD-Audio Files

WMA

(Memory Card)
Transferred WMA Files

Video File Support

My Videos

(Handset/Memory Card)
Downloads/Recorded Files

When using a Memory Card with SD-Video files recorded on other devices, open them from **SD VIDEO**.

Playback Precautions

- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- When battery is low, Media Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Media Player shuts off.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming); downloaded media cannot be saved. Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Compatibility

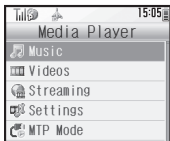
- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.



Downloading Media Files

Download media files from the Internet. Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

- 1 ➔ **Media Player** ➔



Media Player Menu

- 2 **Music or Videos** ➔

- 3 **Download Music or Download Videos** ➔

- Follow the links to download media.

Download via Music Search (Japanese)

In **Music Search** ➔

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Music Files from PCs

- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

Saving AAC Files

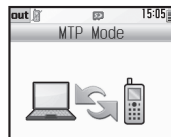
Convert PC music files to 831SH-compatible format (P.15-20), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.15-23) via Mass Storage. Install USB Cable driver beforehand.

Saving WMA Files

Follow these steps to save WMA files via compatible software:
Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.

- 1 ➔ **Media Player** ➔

- 2 **MTP Mode** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔



- 3 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

- Copy music from PC. Refer to the software's help menu for operational instructions.

- 4 ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Connection ends**

- Disconnect USB Cable.



Playing Music

1 → **Media Player** → → **Music** →

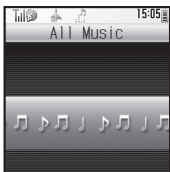
2 **My Music** → → **Select tab (folder)**



Music Playlists Window

3 **All Music** →

4 **Select file** →



Music Playback Window

- Album art appears for compatible Chaku-Uta Full® files. (WMA album art is not supported.)

Using Other Functions while Playing Music

- After , or
- To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:
 - **Yes** →
- Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files
In , **SD AUDIO** or **WMA** → → **From**
- Searching Music Files
After , → **Search** → → **Enter search text** →
- Lyric Display-Compatible Files
• Press to display lyrics.

Music Playback Operations

Replay	(Long Press: rewind)
Skip Forward	(Long Press: fast forward)
Volume Down	(Long Press: mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	
Pause	
Stop	While paused,
Open Help	

*Release for playback.

Music Playback Window Indicators



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Artist name	7	Volume
3	Track number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

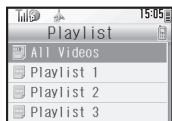
Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point
- Specifying start point
- Accessing linked information
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Changing Sound Effects (P.8-8)

Playing Video

1 → **Media Player** → →

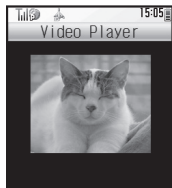
2 **My Videos** → → **Phone Memory or Memory Card** →



Video Playlists Window

3 **All Videos** →

4 **Select file** →



Video Playback Window

5 → **Playback stops**

Playing SD VIDEO Files

In 2, **SD VIDEO** → → 4

Searching Video Files

After , → **Search** → → Enter search text →

At Alarm Time

- Playback stops.

Video Recorded on Other Devices

- Video image may appear rotated.

Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down or help, see P.8-4 "Music Playback Operations."

Replay	(Long Press: rewind')
Skip Forward	(Long Press while paused: advance frame, Long Press: fast forward*)
Toggle Display Size	

*Release for playback.

Video Playback Window Indicators



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Author name	7	Volume
3	Clip number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point
- Specifying start point
- Accessing linked information
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Changing Sound Effects
- Changing playback size
- Setting Backlight status
- Hiding linked information (P.8-8)



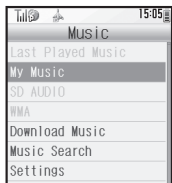
Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre. Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to **プレイリスト**:

- 1 → **Media Player** → → **Music** →



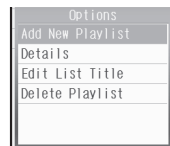
- 2 **My Music** →
- 3 **All Music** → → **Select file** →



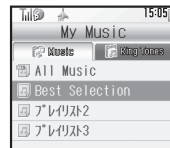
- 4 **Add to Playlist** → → **プレイリスト** →

Renaming Playlists

- 1 In Playlists window, select **Playlist** →



- 2 **Edit List Title** → → **Enter name** →



Advanced

- Organizing Playlists
- Sorting files
- Opening properties
- Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files
- Deleting All WMA files
- Downloading Contents Keys (P.8-9)
- Organizing Playlists
- Sorting files
- Downloading Contents Keys
- Opening properties
- Deleting SD VIDEO files (P.8-10)

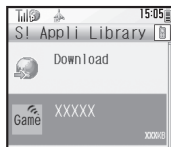


Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 831SH-compatible S! Applications, including games. Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.

1  ➔ **S! Appli** ➔ 

2 **S! Appli Library** ➔ 



S! Appli Library

3 **Select application** ➔ 

Network S! Applications

- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls

- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

Opening S! Appli Notification History

In  **Notification History** ➔ 



Exiting S! Applications

1 





2 **End** ➔ 

Pausing S! Applications
















In  **Suspend** ➔ 

Resuming S! Applications

 ➔ **Resume** ➔ 

- Select **Cancel** to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused. (Additional function activation may be disabled depending on the S! Application.)
- Select **End** to end the S! Application.

Advanced

-   Downloading S! Applications
-  Adjusting S! Application sound volume
-  Canceling surround effect
-  Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions
-  Setting S! Application to activate in Standby
-  Setting Permissions
-  Opening properties (P.8-11)
-  Moving S! Applications to Memory Card
-  Changing S! Application settings
-  Deleting S! Applications
-  Restoring default S! Application settings
-  Restoring default S! Appli Library
-  Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 831SH
-  Opening Java™ license information (P.8-12)



Media Playback

Music & Video

Resuming from stopped point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ ▶ <i>Media Player</i> ▶ ▶ <i>Music or Videos</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ <i>Last Played Music or Last Played Video</i> ▶
Specifying start point	During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Time Search</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ Enter time ▶ ▶
Accessing linked information	During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Access Web Link</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ Yes ▶ ▶

Music

Playing repeatedly or randomly	[Start Here] During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Playback Mode</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ See below
	<i>Repeat One File</i> <i>Repeat</i> ▶ ▶
	<i>Repeat All Files</i> <i>Repeat All</i> ▶ ▶
	<i>Play Randomly</i> <i>Random</i> ▶ ▶
	<i>Repeat Randomly</i> <i>Random Repeat</i> ▶ ▶ ▶
Changing Sound Effects	During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Sound Effects</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ Select effect ▶ ▶

Video

Playing repeatedly or randomly	[Start Here] During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Settings</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ <i>Playback Mode</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ See below
	<i>Repeat One File</i> <i>Repeat</i> ▶ ▶
	<i>Repeat All Files</i> <i>Repeat All</i> ▶ ▶
Changing Sound Effects	During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Settings</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ <i>Sound Effects</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ Select effect ▶ ▶
	During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Settings</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ <i>Display Size</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ Select size ▶ ▶
Changing playback size	During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Settings</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ <i>Backlight</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ Select option ▶ ▶
Setting Backlight status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selecting <i>Normal Settings</i> applies Display Backlight setting.
Hiding linked information	During playback, [⏮] ▶ <i>Settings</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ <i>Web Link Setting</i> ▶ ▶ ▶ Off ▶ ▶



Managing Music Files

Organizing Playlists	<p>Start Here → Media Player → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → See below</p> <p>Adding New Playlists Add New Playlist → Enter name</p> <p>Deleting Playlists Select Playlist → Delete Playlist → Yes</p> <p>Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist → Select file → Delete → Yes</p> <p>Changing File Order Select Playlist → Select file → Change Order → Move file</p>
	<p>→ Media Player → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → All Music → Sort → Select option</p>
	<p>Start Here → Media Player → Music → See below</p> <p>SD AUDIO Files SD AUDIO → All Music → Select file → Details</p> <p>Other Files My Music → Select tab (folder) → Select Playlist → Select file → Details</p>

Sorting files

Opening properties

Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files

Deleting All WMA files

Downloading Contents Keys

Start Here → **Media Player** → **Music** → **SD AUDIO** → **See below**

Deleting Single Files

All Music → **Select file** → **Delete Track** → **Yes**

- Source files will be deleted.

Deleting All Files

All Music → **Del. All Tracks** → **Yes** → **Yes**

- Source files will be deleted.

Editing Title/Artist

All Music → **Select file** → **Edit** → **Select item** → **Enter title or name**

→ **Media Player** → **Settings** → **Delete All WMA** → **Enter Handset Code** → **Yes**

- Source files will be deleted.

→ **Media Player** → **Music** → **My Music** → **Select tab (folder)** → **Select Playlist** → **Select file (with ⌘)** → **Yes**

- Follow onscreen instructions.



Managing Video Files

Organizing Playlists	<p>Start Here → Media Player → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → See below</p> <p>Adding New Playlists Add New Playlist → Enter name</p> <p>Deleting Playlists Select Playlist → Delete Playlist → Yes</p> <p>Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist → Select file → Delete → Yes</p> <p>Changing File Order Select Playlist → Select file → Change Order → Move file</p>
	<p>Media Player → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → All Videos → Sort → Select option</p>
	<p>Media Player → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → All Videos → Select file (with Ⓢ) → Yes</p> <p>• Follow onscreen instructions.</p>

Opening properties

Start Here → Media Player → Videos → See below

SD VIDEO Files

SD VIDEO → Select file → Details

Other Files

My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → Select Playlist → Select file → Details

Deleting SD VIDEO files

Media Player → Videos → SD VIDEO → Select file → Delete → Yes

• Source files will be deleted.



S! Applications

Downloading S! Applications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Download ➔ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Application Volume ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●
Canceling surround effect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Surround ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Calls & Alarms ➔ ● ➔ See below
	<p>Showing Calls</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select item ➔ ● ➔ Show Call Notice ➔ ●
	<p>Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incoming Message ➔ ● ➔ Message Priority ➔ ●
	<p>Showing Alarm Notice</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ➔ ● ➔ Alarm Notice ➔ ● <p>Showing Incoming S! Appli Request Notice</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Notification ➔ ● ➔ Start Notice ➔ ●

Setting S! Application to activate in Standby

Setting S! Application to activate in Standby	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ See below
	<p>Activating Screensaver</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings ➔ ● ➔ Screensaver ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●
	<p>Setting Screensaver</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Select application ➔ ● ☰ ➔ As Screensaver ➔ ● ● As Screensaver appears for compatible S! Applications. ● Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.
	<p>Changing Screensaver Activation Time</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings ➔ ● ➔ Screensaver ➔ ● ➔ Activation Time ➔ ● ➔ Enter time ➔ ●
Setting Permissions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Select application ➔ ☰ ➔ Permission ➔ ● ➔ See below
	<p>Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select item ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
	<p>Resetting Permission Settings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reset Settings ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
Opening properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Select application ➔ ☰ ➔ Details ➔ ●



Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli Library</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Select application → <input type="checkbox"/> (□/✓) → Complete selection → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Move to Card</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose Yes or No and press <input type="checkbox"/>. Repeat application selection step as needed before pressing <input type="checkbox"/>. Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.
Changing S! Application settings	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → Start Here → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → See below </p> <p> Activating Notification Setting <i>Notification Setting</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>On</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> Setting Backlight Status <i>Backlight</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Switch On/Off</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Select option → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting Normal Settings applies Display Backlight setting. <p> Disabling Backlight Flashing <i>Backlight</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Blink</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Off</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> Disabling Vibration <i>Vibration</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Off</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Deleting S! Applications	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli Library</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Select application → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Delete</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset Code may be required. Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.

Restoring default S! Application settings	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Set to Default</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Restoring default S! Appli Library	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Memory All Clear</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.
Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 831SH	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Synchronization</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Opening Java™ license information	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Appli</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Information</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>



Music

? How do I delete files in All Music?

- Delete All Music files via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs-Tones).

? WMA files do not appear (WMA files are not transferable)

- Did you use 831SH to transfer the files? Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
- Copy protection information may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and re-transfer the files.
- Files transferred via Mass Storage appear when moved to corresponding Memory Card folder. (Transfer copy protected files via MTP Mode.)
- WMA files may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

? Cannot play WMA files

- Playback rights may have expired (license not found message appears); re-transfer the files. If files still cannot be played, they may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

Video

? How do I delete files in All Videos?

- Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

? Cannot play video files

- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.

S! Applications

? Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

- The S! Application may already be saved or Memory Card memory may be low.

? S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite Calls & Alarms settings

- Regardless of setting, a message appears for Screensaver S! Applications.



Calendar & Tasks	9-2
Calendar	9-2
Tasks	9-5
Alarms	9-7
Using Alarms	9-7
Wakeup TV	9-9
Using Wakeup TV	9-9
Calculator	9-11
Using Calculator	9-11
Expenses Memo	9-12
Adding Expenses	9-12
Osaifu-Keitai®	9-13
Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)	9-13
Locking IC Card	9-14
Simulated Call	9-17
Faking Incoming Calls	9-17
Stopwatch	9-18
Using Stopwatch	9-18
Countdown Timer	9-19
Using Countdown Timer	9-19
World Clock	9-20
Opening World Clock	9-20

Hour Minder	9-21
Using Hour Minder	9-21
Document Viewer	9-22
Opening PC Documents	9-22
Notepad	9-23
Saving Text	9-23
ASCII Art	9-24
Using ASCII Art	9-24
Voice Recorder	9-25
Recording/Playing Voice	9-25
Scan Barcode	9-26
Scanning Barcodes	9-26
Create QR Code	9-27
Creating QR Codes	9-27
Scan Card	9-28
Scanning Business Cards	9-28
Text Scanner	9-29
Scanning Text	9-29
Additional Functions	9-30
Troubleshooting	9-42

9

Handy Extras

Calendar

Opening Calendar

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar** ➔



Calendar Window

Opening Help

[Calendar Window]

Toggling View

Press repeatedly to toggle Calendar window.



Month View



2Month View



Week View

Key Assignments

All Views

	Open previous page
	Open next page
	Go to the current date
	Open Help

Month/2Month View

	Select date
--	-------------

Week View

	Select date
	Select time block

Advanced

- Changing default view ● Jumping to specified date ● Changing date color ● Selecting task view option ● Adding stamps (Month View) ● Hiding schedules ● Saving additional holidays ● Removing/restoring preset holidays (P.9-30)

Saving Schedules

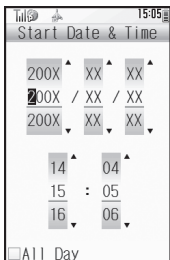
Follow these steps to save subject, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details. Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.

- 1** In Calendar window, select date ➔



- 2** <Add New Entry> ➔

- 3** Enter subject ➔



- 4** Enter start date/time ➔



- 5** End: ➔ ➔ Enter end date/time ➔

- 6** Alarm: ➔

- 7** Alarm Time: ➔ ➔ Select time ➔ ➔

- 8** Description: ➔ ➔ Enter schedule details ➔

- 9** ➔ Saved

All-Day Schedule

In , ➔ From

Custom Alarm Time

In , Alarm Time: ➔ ➔ Other ➔

➔ Enter date/time ➔ ➔ ➔

From

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press , or .

Stopping Alarm to Open Schedule

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , or .

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

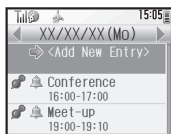
- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Advanced

- Setting Category/Location
- Saving repetitive schedules
- Editing entries
- Changing Alarm tone/video & duration
- Changing Alarm volume
- Selecting Vibration option (And more on P.9-30 - 9-31)

Opening Schedules/Tasks

- 1 In Calendar window, select date →



Schedule List

- 2 Select schedule or task →
- 3 → Standby returns

Opening Task List

In , select task → → Go to Tasks →

Accessing Secret Entries

[Calendar Window] → Unlock Temporarily → → Enter Handset Code →

Opening Related Message

Open schedule-related messages saved from Messaging message list.

- 1 In schedule list, select schedule →
- 2 → Related Mail →
 - Related message opens.
 - To return to schedule window, press .

Deleting Message from Schedule

After 1, → Related Mail: → → Yes → →

Deleting Schedules

One Entry

- 1 In schedule list, select schedule →
 - 2 Delete →
 - 3 This Appointment → → Yes →
- All Entries of the Day
- 1 In Calendar window, select date →
 - 2 Delete → → All This Day → → Yes →

Advanced

- 1 Searching entries Checking memory status Deleting all entries Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View) Deleting entries by specifying month (Month View) Deleting entries in two months (2Month View) (P.9-31 - 9-32)

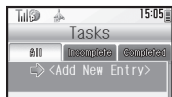
Tasks

Saving Tasks

Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:

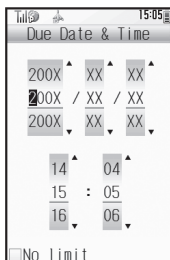
Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.

- 1



- 2

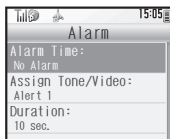
- 3 Enter subject



- 4 Enter due date/time



- 5 Alarm:



- 6 Alarm Time:

- 7 Description:

- 8 Saved

Task with No Due Date/Time

In From

Custom Alarm Time

In , Alarm Time:

From

Advanced

- Hiding tasks
- Editing tasks
- Setting priority
- Changing Alarm tone/video & duration
- Changing Alarm volume
- Selecting Vibration option
- Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.9-32)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press or .

Stopping Alarm to Open Task

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , , or .

When Another Function is Active

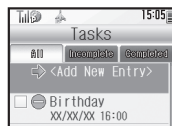
- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks

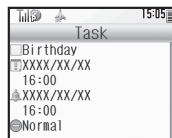
- ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/ Lifestyle menu, Tasks** ➔



Task List

- Use to open completed or uncompleted task list.

- Select task ➔



- ➔ **Standby returns**

Accessing Secret Entries

- After
 -, ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

Marking Tasks as Completed

- After
 -, select task ➔

Deleting Tasks

One Entry

- In task list, select task ➔

- Delete** ➔

- This Task** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

All Completed Tasks

- In task list,

- Delete** ➔ ➔ **All Comp. Tasks** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Advanced

- Searching tasks ● Sorting tasks by priority ● Checking memory status ● Deleting all tasks (P.9-33)

Using Alarms

Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

Set Snooze (Alarm repeats at set interval), Alarm Volume and Duration.

- 1** **Alarms**



Alarm List

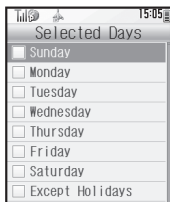
- 2** --:-- **Enter hour (24-hour format)** **Enter minutes**



- 3** Repeat:



- 4** Selected Days



- 5** Select day (/)
- Complete selection**

- 6** Snooze:

- 7** Select interval
- For custom intervals, select *Other*.

- 8** Alarm Volume:

- 9** Adjust level

- 10** Duration:

- 11** Select time
- For custom Duration, select *Other*.

- 12** **Saved**
- For more settings, repeat **2** - **12**.

- 13** **Alarm setting ends**

Activating Alarm Once or Daily

- In **4**, *Once or Every Day (All)*
- From** **5**

Selecting/Canceling All Days

- In **5**, **Check All or Uncheck All**
-

Excluding Holidays

- In **5**, select day (/)
- Complete selection** **Except Holidays**
- From** **5**

Advanced

- Editing entries Saving entry name Changing Alarm tone/video Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (**P.9-33**)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

**Stopping Alarm**

- Press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze

While Snoozing, → Yes →

- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm

1 In Alarm list, select entry →

2 **Switch Off** →

- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry

In , **Switch On** →

Deleting Alarm**One Entry**

1 In Alarm list, select entry →

2 **Reset Alarm** →

3 **Yes** →

All Entries

1 In Alarm list, select entry →

→ **Clear All** →

2 **Enter Handset Code** →

→ **Yes** →

Using Wakeup TV

Setting Wakeup TV

Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

- Complete TV Area Setup beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

- 1



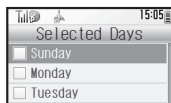
Wakeup TV List

- 2



Wakeup TV Menu

- 3 **Repeat:**
- 4 **Selected Days**



- 5 **Select day**
- 6 **Channel:**
- 7 **Select channel**
- 8 **Saved**
 - For more settings, repeat - .
- 9 **Wakeup TV setting ends**

Activating TV Once or Daily

- In , **Once or Every Day (All)**

Selecting/Canceling All Days

- In , **Check All or Uncheck All**

Excluding Holidays

- In , **select day** **Except Holidays**

Canceling Alarm

- Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps:
[Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm On/Off:**

Adjusting Alarm Volume

- [Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm Volume:**

Advanced

- Editing entries Changing Alarm tone/video Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.9-34)

At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.



Stopping Alarm Instantly

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- TV may not activate depending on the function.

After TV is On for a Period of Time

- Confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to exit TV.

Canceling Wakeup TV

- 1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔
- 2 **Wakeup TV Off** ➔
 - Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry

In , **Wakeup TV On** ➔

Deleting Wakeup TV

■ One Entry

- 1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔
- 2 **Reset Alarm** ➔
- 3 **Yes** ➔

■ All Entries

- 1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔ ➔ **Clear All** ➔
- 2 Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Using Calculator

- 1 In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, *Calculator*



Calculator Window

- 2 Use Keypad to enter digits
 Calculate
- 3 Calculator ends

Key Assignments

+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
x (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Sum)	
C-CE (Clear)	
CM (Clear Memory)	
RM (Recall Memory)	
M+ (Add to Memory)	
. (Decimal)	
+/- (Positive/Negative Value)	
% (Percentage)	

Memory Calculation

- Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset power is turned off.

Incoming Calls

- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

Using % Function

Use to find definite percentage of a known value.

Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000

- Enter *800,000* *x* *30* *%*
 ■ *240,000* appears.

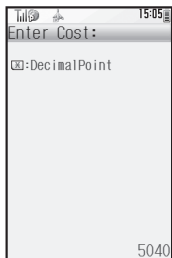
Advanced

- Copying calculation results Changing exchange rate for currency conversion Converting currencies (P.9-34)

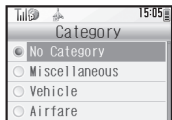
Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses

- 1 Enter amount →



- 2



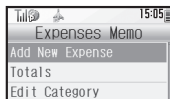
- 3 Select Category → → Saved

Saving under Custom Category

In ③, Other → → Enter name →

Checking Entries

- 1 → **Tools** → → In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, **Expenses
Memo** →



- 2 **Totals** →



Expenses Memo List

- 3 → Standby returns

Saving Entries to Notepad

[Expenses Memo List] → **Save to
Notepad** →

- All expense details are saved as a single entry.

Deleting Entries

- One Entry

- 1 In Expenses Memo list,
select entry →

- 2 **Delete Item** → → **Yes** →

- All Entries

- 1 In Expenses Memo list, →
Delete All →

- 2 **Enter Handset Code** →
→ **Yes** →

Advanced

- Changing Category of saved entry Changing amount Renaming Categories (P.9-34)

Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 831SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli

- ➔ *Tools* ➔ □ ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➔ □ ➔ *Lifestyle-Appli* ➔ □ ➔ *Select application* ➔ □

Lifestyle-Appli Precautions

- Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

Advanced

- ☞ Enabling to view e-money balances
- Checking e-money balance on External Display
- Moving applications up/down Balance Info list
- Removing applications from Balance Info list (P.9-35)

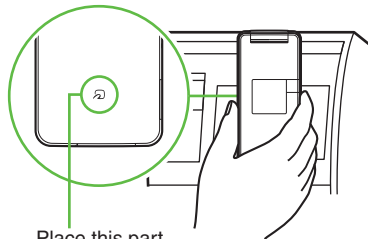
Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction:

Example: Making an electronic payment

- Lifestyle-Appli activation is not necessary.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off (if battery is adequately charged).
- Calls/Internet transmissions do not affect transactions.

- 1 Place  logo over reader/writer ➔ Confirm scan results



Place this part
over reader/writer

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.

Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note

SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

When Placed Over Sensor

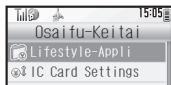
- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Handset may respond automatically for some services.

Locking IC Card

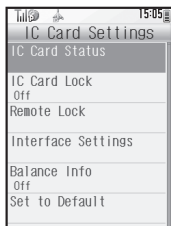
IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.

- 1 **Tools** **In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai**



- 2 **IC Card Settings**



IC Card Settings Menu

- 3 **IC Card Lock** **On**

- 4 **Enter Handset Code**
 Yes

Canceling IC Card Lock

- In , **IC Card Lock** **Off**
 Enter Handset Code

Advanced

- Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands Opening IC Card properties Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (P.9-35)

Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

Mail Remote Lock	Send mail to activate Remote Lock
Call Remote Lock	Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock

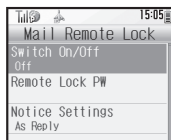
Mail Remote Lock

■ Preparation on Handset

- 1 → **Tools** → → **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai** →
- 2 **IC Card Settings** →
- 3 **Remote Lock** → → **Enter Handset Code** →



4 **Mail Remote Lock** →



Mail Remote Lock Menu

5 **Remote Lock PW** →

6 **Enter password** →

7 **Switch On/Off** →

8 **On** → →

Canceling Mail Remote Lock

In , **Off** → →

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Mail**
If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

1 **Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password as subject**

- After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.

Call Remote Lock

Preparation on Handset

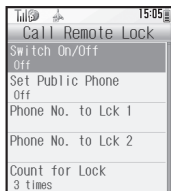
1 → **Tools** → → **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai** →

2 **IC Card Settings** →

3 **Remote Lock** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

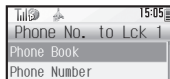


4 **Call Remote Lock** →



Call Remote Lock Menu

5 **Phone No. to Lck 1 or Phone No. to Lck 2** →



6 **Phone Book** → → **Select entry** → → **Select phone number** →

- Select **Phone Number** to enter directly.

7 **Switch On/Off** →

8 **On** → →

Enabling Activation via Public Phone
In , **Set Public Phone** → → **On**
→ → **From**

Canceling Call Remote Lock
In , **Off** → →

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Phone**
If handset cannot receive calls IC Card Lock is not set.

1 **Using one of the specified phones, call handset**

- Send Caller ID.

2 **Handset receives call** → **End the call**

- The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

3 **Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice**



- After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation. Confirm the message and end the call.

If Series is Interrupted by Another Call

- Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

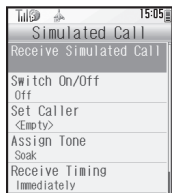
Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.

- Save name and phone number to show as Caller ID.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings. To override Silent setting, see P.9-36.

Setting Simulated Call

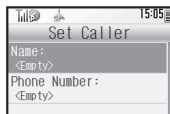
- 1 → **Tools** → → **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Simulated Call** →



Simulated Call Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → → **On** →

- 3 **Set Caller** →



- 4 **Name:** → → **Enter name** →

- 5 **Phone Number:** → → **Enter phone number** → →

- 6 **Assign Tone** → → **Select tone/file** →

- 7 → **PIM/Lifestyle menu returns**

When Name and Phone Number are Unset

- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."

Canceling Simulated Call

[Simulated Call Menu] **Switch On/Off**
→ → **Off** → →

Setting Wait Time

[Simulated Call Menu] **Receive Timing**
→ → **Select time** → →

Using Simulated Call

- 1 **(Long)**
 - Available regardless of handset position.
 - Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
 - Ringtone stops after a period of time.
- 2 **In incoming Voice Call window, press**
- 3 → **Simulated Call ends**

When Receive Timing is Not Immediately

- Press or during wait time to cancel Simulated Call activation.
- Simulated Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

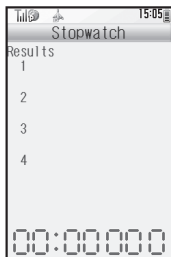
Advanced

- Starting via Simulated Call menu
- Clearing caller information
- Overriding Silent volume setting (P.9-36)

Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops when battery runs low.

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Clocks/Gauges** ➔ **Stopwatch** ➔



Stopwatch Window

- 2 ➔ **Stopwatch starts**
- 3 ➔ **Stopwatch stops**
- Press to resume.
- 4 ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Stopwatch ends**
- Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times

While Stopwatch is running,

Saving Records to Notepad

After , ➔ **Save to Notepad** ➔

Resetting Records

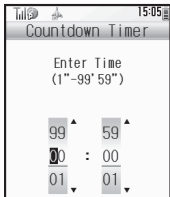
After , ➔ **From**

Incoming Calls

- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

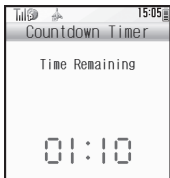
Using Countdown Timer

- 1** → **Tools** → → **Countdown Timer** →



Timer Entry Window

- 2** **Enter minutes** → **Enter seconds** →



Countdown Timer Window

- Press to change time.

- 3** → **Countdown starts**
 • Press to stop/resume countdown.

- 4** **Set time elapses** → **Tone sounds**

- 5** → **Yes** → → **Countdown Timer ends**

Using Timer Records

- After **1**, → **Select record** → → →
 → **From** **3**

Resetting Timer

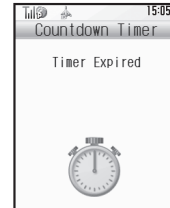
- Stop countdown and**

Incoming Calls

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.



Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press or a Side Key. (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)

When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call

- Tone sounds after the call.

Opening World Clock

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Clocks/Gauges** → **World Clock** →



Local Time Zone

World Time Zone

- 2



Set Time Zone Window

- 3 → **Select area** →

- 4 → **World Clock ends**

Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)

[Set Time Zone Window]

- To cancel, press .

Adding Custom Time Zone

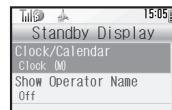
[Set Time Zone Window] → Enter city name → → + or - → →

Enter time difference →

Opening World Clock in Standby

- 1 → **Settings** → → **In Phone menu, Display** →

- 2 **Standby Display** →



- 3 **Clock/Calendar** →

- 4 **World Clock (L), etc.** →

Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

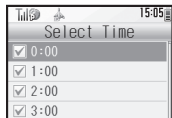
- 1 → **Tools** → → **Clocks/Gauges** → **Hour Minder** →



Hour Minder Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → → **On** →

- 3 **Select Time** →



- 4 **Select hour** → (/) → **Complete selection** →

Advanced

- Changing Hour Minder tone/video
- Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time
- Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode
- Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (P.9-36)

- 5 → **Saved**

- 6 → **Hour Minder setting ends**

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume

- In 2, **Advanced** → → **Volume:** → → **Adjust level** → → **From** 5

Changing Hour Minder Duration

- In 2, **Advanced** → → **Duration:** → → **Select time** → → **From** 5

- For custom Duration, select **Other**.

Selecting/Canceling All Hours

- In 4, → **Check All or Uncheck All** →

At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- Hour Minder does not activate.

Incoming Calls

- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

Canceling Hour Minder

- 1 In Hour Minder menu, **Switch On/Off** → → **Off** → →

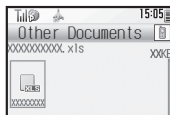
Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

- PDF (.pdf)
- Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)
- Microsoft® Word (.doc)
- Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Download files via the Internet.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.15-23).

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Document Viewer** ➔



2 **Select file** ➔

Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)
 In open file, (Long) ➔ **Specify portion** ➔ ➔ **Zoom Out or Zoom In** ➔

Key Assignments

	View whole page
	Scroll
	View upper left
	Toggle full screen view on/off
	View upper right
	Zoom out
	Continuous zoom out
	View center
	Zoom in
	Continuous zoom in
	View lower left
	Jump to page
	View lower right
	Open Help
	Next page
	Previous page
	Fit width
	Rotate 90°

Saving Text

New Notepad Entry

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Notepad** →



Notepad List

- 2 **<Add New Entry>** →



- 3 **Enter text** →

- 4 **Select Category** → → **Saved**

Sorting Entries Temporarily

[Notepad List]

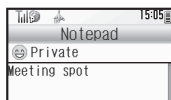
- Press repeatedly to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).

Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry

- In a text entry window, → **Notepad** → → **Call Notepad** → → **Select entry** →

Opening Notepad

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry →



- 2 → **List returns**

Deleting Entries

■ One Entry

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry →

- 2 **Delete Item** → → **Yes** →

■ All Entries

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry → → **Setting/Manage** →

- 2 **Delete All** → → **Enter Handset Code** → → **Yes** →

Advanced

- Editing Notepad
- Searching text within all entries
- Inserting Notepad text into message text
- Sending entries via S! Mail
- Creating text files
- Importing text files
- Checking memory status
- Opening properties (P.9-37)

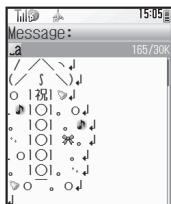
Using ASCII Art

Inserting ASCII Art



- 1 In message text entry window,
 ➔ **Call ASCII Art** ➔ 







- 2 Select entry ➔ 



Previewing ASCII Art

- In 2, select entry ➔ 
- Press  to insert ASCII Art.

Editing Entries

- 1  ➔ **Tools** ➔  ➔ 
Doc./Rec. ➔ **ASCII Art** ➔ 



ASCII Art List

- 2 Select entry ➔  ➔ **Edit** ➔ 

Opening Entries

- In 2, select entry ➔  ➔ **View** ➔ 

Adding New Entries

- In 2, <Empty> ➔  ➔ **Create ASCII Art** ➔ 

Deleting Entries

- 1 In ASCII Art list, select entry
 ➔ **Delete** ➔ 

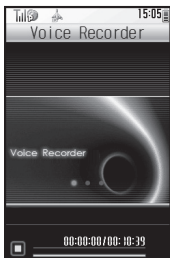
- 2 **Yes** ➔ 

Recording/Playing Voice

Recording

- If battery runs low while recording, Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Record conversations during calls via **Record Caller Voice**.

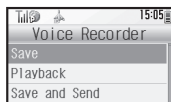
- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Voice Recorder** ➔



Recording Window

- 2 ➔ **Recording starts**

- 3 ➔ **Recording stops**



- For **Extended Voice**, recording is saved automatically.

- 4 **Save** ➔

Play Before Saving

In 4, **Playback** ➔ ➔ **Playback starts** ➔ ➔ **Playback stops**

Starting Over

In 4, ➔ **From** 2

Playback

- 1 In recording window, ➔ **Ring Songs-Tones** ➔



- 2 **Select file** ➔

Playing Data Folder Files

➔ **Data Folder** ➔ ➔ **Ring Songs-Tones** ➔ ➔ **Select file** ➔

Playback Operations

	Adjust volume
	Pause/resume
	Stop

Advanced

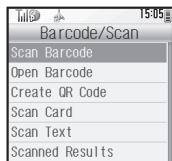
- Saving longer recordings
- Sending Voice files via S! Mail
- Switching storage media (P.9-37)

Scanning Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).

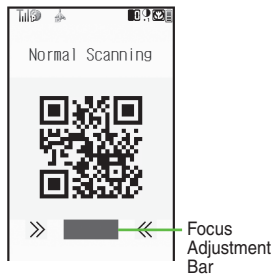
- Membership file or password may be required when scanning barcodes.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan**
→



- 2 **Scan Barcode** →

- 3 **Frame barcode in center of Display**



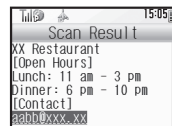
Scan Window

- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

- 4 → **Scan starts**

- If recognition takes time, slowly adjust the distance between handset and barcode.
- Press to stop scan.

- 5 **Tone sounds** → **Scan results appear**



Key Assignments in Scan Window

- : **Toggle focus mode**
- : **Switch to Photo Camera**
- : **Focus Lock**
- : **Mobile Light on/off**
- : **Adjust brightness**
- : **Open Help**

Split Data

- After scanning, confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.

Starting Over

- After , → **Yes** → → **From**

Advanced

- Scanning during text entry ● Scanning continuously ● Reading saved barcode images ● Saving scan results ● Saving to Notepad ● Saving linked info to Phone Book ● Opening saved scan results ● Using linked info ● Using images as Wallpaper ● Saving images & melodies ● Copying text (And more on P.9-38 - 9-39)

Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

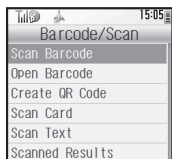


Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

Procedure

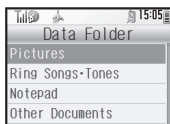
Follow these steps to create QR Codes from Data Folder files:

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan** →



- 2 **Create QR Code** →

- 3 **Data Folder** →



- 4 **Select folder** → → **Select file or entry** →

- QR Code is created.

- 5

- QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

From Phone Book Entries

In , **Phone Book** → → **Select entry** → →

From My Details

In , **My Details** → → **Select item** → →

From Entered Text

In , **Text Input** → → **Enter text** → →

Switching Storage Media

In , → **Save to** → → **Phone or Memory Card** → →

Attaching to S! Mail

In , → **Send As** → → **Complete message** →

Incoming Calls

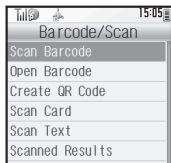
- QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

- 1** → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan**



- 2** **Scan Card** →

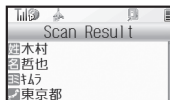
- 3** **Frame card on Display**



Scan Window

- 4** • Press to stop scan.

- 5** → **Scan results appear**



- 6** → • New Phone Book entry is saved.

Key Assignments in Scan Window

- : Toggle focus mode
- : Switch to Photo Camera
- : Focus Lock
- : Mobile Light on/off
- : Adjust brightness
- : Open Help

If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit

- Confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:

Yes →

Changing Save Location

After , → **Save to** → →

Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture

After , → **Add Image** → →

Starting Over

After , → **Yes** → →

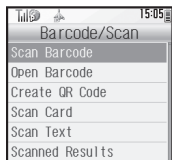
Advanced

- Saving to Notepad
- Pasting to message text
- Copying text (P.9-40)

Scanning Text

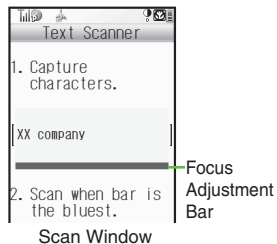
Some text cannot be scanned.

- 1** **Tools** **Barcode/Scan**
Doc./Rec. **Barcode/Scan**



- 2** **Scan Text**

- 3** **Frame text in center of Display**

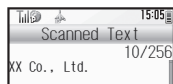


- Adjust to frame text in [].
- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

- 4**
- Press to stop scan.

- 5** **Select line** **Scan results appear**

- 6**



Key Assignments in Scan Window

- : Toggle focus mode
- : Switch to Photo Camera
- : Focus Lock
- : Mobile Light on/off
- : Adjust brightness
- : Open Help

Correcting Text Type

- After , **Change Mode**
- Select type

Editing Scanned Text

- After , **Select/Edit**
- Select character Select alternative from list or edit directly

Starting Over

- In , **Yes** **From**

Advanced

- Scanning during text entry Scanning more text Saving scan results Saving linked info to Phone Book Saving to Notepad Opening saved scan results Using linked info Pasting to message text Copying text (P.9-40 - 9-41)

Calendar

■ View Settings

Changing default view	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Default View</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select type</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Jumping to specified date	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → [+8] → <i>Enter date</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Changing date color	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → See below </p> <p> By Days of the Week <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Set Color</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>By Week</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select day</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select color</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> By Date <i>Select date</i> → [+4] → <i>Select color</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> Resetting "By Date" Colors <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Set Color</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Reset Color</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select option</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tasks View</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select option</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select date</i> → [+2] → <i>Select stamp</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> • Available in Month View only. </p>
	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select date</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select entry</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Secret:</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>On</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>

Saving additional holidays	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Set Holiday</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Private</i> → See below </p> <p> Adding Holidays <i><Empty></i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter name</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter date</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select frequency</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> Editing Added Holidays <i>Select holiday</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Edit</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Name:</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter name</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Date:</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter date</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select frequency</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Set Holiday</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Private or Public</i> → <i>Select holiday</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> (<input type="checkbox"/> / <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) </p>
Removing/restoring preset holidays	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Set Holiday</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Private or Public</i> → <i>Select holiday</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> (<input type="checkbox"/> / <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) </p>
<h3>■ Saving/Editing Schedules</h3>	
Setting Category/Location	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select date</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select entry</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → See below </p> <p> Category <i>Category:</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select Category</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> Location <i>Location:</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter location</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Tools</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select date</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select entry</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Repeat:</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select frequency</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter repeat time</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> • Repeat time is not available for <i>Every Year</i>. </p>

Saving S! Friend's Status information	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Select date → Select entry → S! Friend's Status: → Link Setting: → Linked → See below</p> <p>Availability Answer Status: → Edit → Set Category first.</p> <p>Comment Comment: → Enter text → Set Category first.</p>
Editing entries	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Select date → Select entry → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving schedules →</p>
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Select date → Select entry → Alarm: → See below</p> <p>Alarm Tone/Video Assign Tone/Video: → Select folder → Select tone/file → Set start point if required.</p> <p>Duration Duration: → Select time →</p>
Changing Alarm volume	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Alarm Settings → Alarm Volume: → Adjust level →</p>
Selecting Vibration option	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Alarm Settings → Vibration: → Select option →</p>

Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Alarm Settings → For Manner Mode: → Ring → Yes →</p>
---	--

Managing Schedules

Searching entries	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → See below</p> <p>By Subject *6 → Enter text →</p> <p>By Category *9 → Select Category →</p>
Checking memory status	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Select date → Memory Status →</p>
Deleting all entries	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Delete → All Appointments → Enter Handset Code → Yes →</p>
Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → See below</p> <p>Within One Week Select date → Delete → All This Week → Yes →</p> <p>Up to the End of Previous Week Select date → Delete → Up to Last Week → Yes →</p>

Deleting entries by specifying month (Month View)	Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → See below
	Within One Month Select date → Delete → All This Month → Yes
	Up to the End of Previous Month Select date → Delete → Up to Last Month → Yes
Deleting entries in two months (2Month View)	Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → Delete → All This 2Months → Yes

Tasks

■ Task List

Hiding tasks	Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → Select task → Edit → Secret: → On
--------------	---

■ Saving/Editing Tasks

Editing tasks	Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → Select task → Edit → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving tasks
Setting priority	Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → Select task → Edit → Priority: → Select option

Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → Select task → Edit → Alarm: → See below
	Alarm Tone/Video Assign Tone/Video: → Select folder → Select tone/file → Yes
	Duration Duration: → Select time → Yes
Changing Alarm volume	Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → Alarm Settings → Alarm Volume: → Adjust level
Selecting Vibration option	Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → Alarm Settings → Vibration: → Select option
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → Alarm Settings → For Manner Mode: → Ring → Yes

Managing Tasks

Searching tasks	<p>[Start Here] → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Find → See below</p> <p>By Subject By Subject → Enter text</p> <p>By Due Date By Due Date → Enter date</p>
	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Sort → Priority</p>
Sorting tasks by priority	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Memory Status</p>
Checking memory status	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Delete → All Tasks → Enter Handset Code → Yes</p>
Deleting all tasks	

Alarms

Editing entries	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Alarms → Select entry → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving entries</p>
Saving entry name	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Alarms → Select entry → Subject: → Enter name</p>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<p>[Start Here] → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Alarms → Select entry → Assign Tone/Video: → See below</p> <p>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder → Select tone/file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select start point if required. <p>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video Customized Screen</p>
	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Alarms → Select entry → Vibration: → On or Link to Sound</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Link to Sound to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Alarms → Settings → For Manner Mode → Ring → Yes</p>
Activating Alarm based on World Clock time	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Alarms → Settings → Link to World Clk → On</p>

Wakeup TV

Editing entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → Select entry → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving entries
Changing Alarm tone/video	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → Select entry → Assign Tone/Video: → See below</p> <p>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder → Select tone/file </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select start point if required. <p>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video <i>Customized Screen</i> </p>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → <i>For Manner Mode</i> → <i>Ring</i> → <i>Yes</i> →

Calculator

Copying calculation results	While result appears, → <i>Copy</i> →
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calculator</i> → → <i>Money Converter</i> → <i>Exchange Rate</i> → <i>Domestic or Foreign</i> → Enter rate →
Converting currencies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calculator</i> → Enter amount of money → → <i>Money Converter</i> → <i>To Domestic or To Foreign</i> → • Set Exchange Rate first.

Expenses Memo

Changing Category of saved entry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> → <i>Totals</i> → Select entry → Select Category →
Changing amount	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> → <i>Totals</i> → Select entry → → <i>Change Amount</i> → Edit →
Renaming Categories	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> → <i>Edit Category</i> → Select Category → Enter name →

Osaifu-Keitai®

Enabling to view e-money balances	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Balance Info → Enter Handset Code → <Empty> → SI Appli or Lifestyle-Appli → Select application • For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications. • Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list.
Checking e-money balance on External Display	<p>With handset closed, (Long) → Balance appears → Balance disappears</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use (Long) to view balances of listed entries. • Save Lifestyle-Appli to Balance Info list beforehand. • Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock is active.
Moving applications up/down Balance Info list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Balance Info → Enter Handset Code → Select application → Move → Select location
Removing applications from Balance Info list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Balance Info → Enter Handset Code → Select application → Delete
Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Interface Settings → Enter Handset Code → Select item → Off
Opening IC Card properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → IC Card Status

Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient

Start Here → **Tools** → **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai** → **IC Card Settings** → **Remote Lock** → **Enter Handset Code** → **Mail Remote Lock** → **Notice Settings** → **Send Notice** → **See below**

Changing Recipient

To Set Recipient → **Set Recipient** → **Select method** → **Select/enter number/address** → **OK** → **Y**

- Omit step of pressing **Back** when selecting **Phone Book** as setting method.

Disabling Notice

Off → **OK** → **Y**

Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock

• **Tools** → **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai** → **IC Card Settings** → **Remote Lock** → **Enter Handset Code** → **Call Remote Lock** → **Count for Lock** → **Enter Missed Call count** → **OK** → **Y**

Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings

• **Tools** → **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai** → **IC Card Settings** → **Set to Default** → **Enter Handset Code** → **Yes**

Simulated Call

Starting via Simulated Call menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Simulated Call → Receive Simulated Call → Yes Simulated Call starts immediately regardless of Receive Timing setting. Settings remain even after starting Simulated Call during setup.
Clearing caller information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Simulated Call → Set Caller → Yes
Overriding Silent volume setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Simulated Call → For Silent Mode → Ring → Yes

Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder tone/video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start Here → Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Hour Minder → Advanced → Assign Tone/Video: → See below Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder → Select tone/file → Select start point if required. Using Customized Screen Tone/Video Customized Screen
Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Hour Minder → Advanced → Vibration: → On or Link to Sound Select Link to Sound to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.
Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Hour Minder → Advanced → For Manner Mode: → Ring → Yes
Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Hour Minder → Advanced → Link to World Clk: → On

Notepad

Editing Notepad	<p>Start Here → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → See below</p> <p>Editing Text Edit Text → Edit</p> <p>Changing Category Change Category → Select Category</p>
	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Search</p> <p>Enter text</p>
Searching text within all entries	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Send → As Message Text → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Inserting Notepad text into message text	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Send → As Message Text → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Sending entries via S! Mail	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Send → Via Message → Complete message</p>
Creating text files	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Create Text File → Enter name → Save here</p>
Importing text files	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Import Text File → Select file</p>
Checking memory status	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Memory Status</p>

Opening properties

Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Details

Voice Recorder

Saving longer recordings	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → Record Time → Recording starts → Recording ends</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insert Memory Card to record in <i>Extended Voice</i> mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)
Sending Voice files via S! Mail	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → Recording starts → Recording ends → Save and Send → Complete message</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available in <i>For Message</i> mode.
Switching storage media	<p>Tools → Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → Save Recording to → Select option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available in <i>For Message</i> mode. Set to <i>Ask Each Time</i> to select media after every recording.

Scan Barcode

Scanning during text entry	<p>[Start Here] In a text entry window, in center of Display </p> <p>Pasting All Scan Results</p> <p></p>
	<p>Pasting a Part of Scan Results</p> <p> </p>
Scanning continuously	<p> in center of Display </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Choose Yes to continue scanning or No and press to view scan results.
Reading saved barcode images	<p> </p>
Saving scan results	<p> in center of Display </p>
Saving to Notepad	<p> in center of Display </p>

Saving linked info to Phone Book

- in center of Display
- To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.
 - When **MEMORY:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.

Opening saved scan results

-
- Select a file and press to rename files, open properties or delete files.
 - Some files may not open.

Using linked info

- [Start Here] in center of Display
- Dialing Numbers**
- Select phone number
- Sending Messages**
- Select mail address
- When **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Composition window.
- Accessing Internet Sites**
- Select URL

Using images as Wallpaper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Tools → ● → ☒ Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select image → ☒ → Set as Wallpaper → ● → ● ● For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.
Saving images & melodies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Tools → ● → ☒ Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select file → ☒ → To Data Folder → ●
Opening or playing files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Tools → ● → ☒ Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select file → ●
Using images for System Graphics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Tools → ● → ☒ Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → Select image → ☒ → As System → ● → Select item → ● → Specify display area → ● ● Some images may be usable without specifying display area.

Pasting to message text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☒ Start Here → ● → Tools → ● → ☒ Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → ☒ → Send Message → ● → See below
	<p>All Text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ☒ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
	<p>Selected Text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☒ → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ☒ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☒ Start Here → ● → Tools → ● → ☒ Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → ● → Scan Barcode → ● → Frame barcode in center of Display → ● → See below
	<p>Text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☒ → Copy → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ● <p>Number, Address or URL</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select number, mail address or URL → ☒ → Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL → ●

Scan Card

Saving to Notepad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Card → Frame card in center of Display → Notepad
Pasting to message text	<p>Start Here → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Card → Frame card in center of Display → Send Message → See below</p> <p>All Text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SI Mail or SMS → Complete message SI Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. <p>Selected Text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select first character → Highlight text range → SI Mail or SMS → Complete message SI Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	<p>Start Here → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Card → Frame card in center of Display → See below</p> <p>Text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Copy → Select first character → Highlight text range

Scan Text

Scanning during text entry	<p>In a text entry window, Scan → Text Scanner → Frame text in center of Display → Select line</p>
Scanning more text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → Continue Part or Scan More Select <i>Continue Part</i> to enter additional text or <i>Scan More</i> to enter text after a line break.
Saving scan results	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → Save
Saving linked info to Phone Book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → Select number or mail address → Save to Ph.Book → As New Entry → Complete other fields To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.
Saving to Notepad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → Notepad
Opening saved scan results	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scanned Results → Select file Select a file and press to rename files, open properties or delete files. Some files may not open.

Using linked info	<p>[Start Here] → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → See below</p> <p>Dialing Numbers Select phone number →</p> <p>Sending Messages Select mail address → Complete message →</p> <p>Accessing Internet Sites Select URL →</p>
	<p>[Start Here] → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → Send Message → See below</p> <p>All Text → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. <p>Selected Text → Select first character → Highlight text range → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message →</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.


Copying text	<p>[Start Here] → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → See below</p> <p>Text → Copy → Select first character → Highlight text range →</p> <p>Number, Address or URL Select number, mail address or URL → Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL →</p>

Osaifu-Keitai®

? Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Recognition via reader/writer takes time

- Check  logo area. Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

? Call Remote Lock does not activate even after specified number of Missed Calls

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from other numbers. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

Wakeup TV

? TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.

Voice Recorder

? Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

? Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

? Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

? Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

? Cannot read barcodes during text entry

- Scanning is not available during calls or when mobile camera is active.

? Cannot read barcode images in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

? Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

? Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.

Mobile Widget	10-2
Customizing Standby Display (Japanese).....	10-2
S! Quick News	10-5
Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)	10-5
S! Information Channel	10-6
S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese).....	10-6
e-Books	10-7
Reading e-Books (Japanese)	10-7

S! Friend's Status	10-8
Using S! Friend's Status	10-8
S! Circle Talk	10-11
Using S! Circle Talk	10-11
Blog Tool	10-13
Blogging	10-13
Additional Functions	10-15
Troubleshooting	10-22

10

Entertainment & Communication



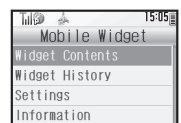
Customizing Standby Display (Japanese)

Paste various widgets (applications) to Standby to access/activate information/ functions immediately from Standby.



Obtaining Widgets

- 1 ➔ **Entertainment** ➔
➔ **Mobile Widget** ➔



Mobile Widget Menu

- 2 **Widget Contents** ➔



Widget List

- 3 **Download** ➔

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Installing Widgets

- Some widgets may need to be installed manually; follow these steps:

- [Widget List] Select widget ➔ ➔
Install ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Activating Single Widgets

- [Widget List] Select widget ➔ ➔

Advanced

- Opening properties
- Opening widget notification history
- Canceling automatic updates
- Receiving updates automatically while abroad
- Disabling widget notifications
- Disabling cookies
- Deleting cookies (P.10-15)



Saving Widgets to Standby

- 1
 - Pointer () appears.
- 2 Use to select (OPEN)
 - ➔



- Press to toggle selection.
 - Alternatively, use to point to (OPEN) and press .
- 3 Select widget ➔
 - Corresponding icon appears in Standby.
 - 4 Use to specify target location ➔

Removing Widgets from Standby

- 1 ➔ Use to select widget ➔ ➔
 - Operation ➔ ➔ Remove ➔ ➔
 - Yes ➔

Moving Widgets

- 1 ➔ Use to select widget ➔ ➔
 - Operation ➔ ➔ Change Layout ➔
 - ➔ Specify target location ➔

Moving Widgets to Front/Back

- 1 ➔ Use to select widget ➔ ➔
 - Operation ➔ ➔ To Front or To Back ➔

Updating View

- 1 ➔ Use to select widget ➔ ➔
 - Operation ➔ ➔ Update View ➔

Using Widgets

- 1 ➔ Use to select widget ➔
- 2
 - Widget activates; follow onscreen instructions.

Using Sheets

Paste widgets and Standby shortcuts on each sheet; toggle sheets to use them.

Saving Widgets on Other Sheets

- 1 In Widget list, select widget
 - ➔
- 2 Set as StbyShortcut ➔



- 3 Select sheet ➔



- 4 Specify target location ➔

Advanced

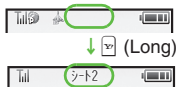
- Logging in to Yahoo!JAPAN
- Viewing widget-related information
- Reversing icon selection order with
- Slowing pointer speed
- Editing sheet names
- Locking sheets (P.10-15 - 10-16)





Mobile Widget

1 Toggling Sheets

1 → (Long)



- To toggle further, Long Press  or press  repeatedly.
- Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
- Save widgets as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

Using Locked Sheets

 → Select  →  → Enter
Handset Code → 

2 Deleting Widgets

■ One Entry

1 In Widget list, select widget





- *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況* cannot be deleted.

2 Delete → → Yes →

■ All Entries

1 In Widget list,

- When an item other than *Download* or *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況* is selected, press  then select *Manage Items* and press .

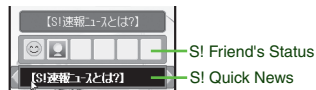
2 Delete All → → Enter Handset Code →

3 Yes →

- If there is widget saved in Standby, a confirmation appears.

Using S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget

831SH is preloaded with *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況* (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget) that shows S! Quick News and S! Friend's Status information in Standby.



View Settings

■ Setting View Pattern

1 → Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget →

2 Operation → → Pattern Setting →

3 Select item → (✓) →


■ Switching View

1 → Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget →

2 Operation → → Switch Pattern →

- Repeat the above steps to switch the view.

Advanced

-  ● Adding news items ● Changing news scroll speed ● Showing unread news only ● Showing news images ● Assigning members ● Managing members (P.10-16)

Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news.
Transmission fees apply.

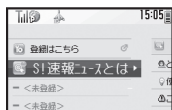
Registering S! Quick News Items

- 1 → **Entertainment** → → **S! Quick News** →



S! Quick News Menu

- 2 **S! Quick News List** →



S! Quick News List

- 3 **登録はこちら** → → **Yes** →

- Handset connects to the Internet.

- 4 **Select item** →

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Registering with S! Loop Items

- [S! Quick News Menu] **S! Loop List** → → **S!ループにアクセス** → → **Yes** →

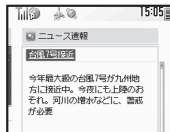
- Handset connects to the Internet. Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Opening Information

- 1 **In S! Quick News List, select item** →

- Title list appears.

- 2 **Select title** →



- Press to return to title list, or to open next title.

Updating Items Manually

- [S! Quick News List] **Select item** → → **更新** → → **一件** or **全件** →

Receiving S! Loop Item Updates

- [S! Quick News Menu] **S! Loop List** → → **Select item** → → **Select title** →

Indicators

	Unread Special news		Unread General news
	Read Special news		Read General news
	Unread News Flash		Auto update disabled
	Read News Flash		

Advanced

- Updating S! Quick News list automatically
- Checking update schedule
- Deleting S! Quick News items
- Resetting S! Quick News List and S! Loop List
- Updating S! Loop items manually
- Updating S! Loop list automatically
- Deleting S! Loop items
- Changing background image
- Accessing source sites
- Disabling image download (P.10-17)



S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically; use Weather Indicator as needed. Transmission fees apply.

Service Registration & Content Subscription

- 1 **Entertainment** **S! Information Channel/Weather**



S! Information Channel Menu

- 2 **Registration/Cancel**
- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

- 1 **While Information window appears, S! Info. Channel**
- S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
 - S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

- 2 **Page closes**

Opening Unread Latest Issue

[S! Information Channel Menu]
What's New

Opening Back Issues

[S! Information Channel Menu]
Back Issue **Select date**

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

	Clear skies (day)		Snow
	Clear skies (night)		Thunder showers
	Cloudy		Then
	Rain		Partly/chance of

Example: **Partly cloudy with a chance of rain**
Indicators other than the above also appear for more information.

Manual Update

[S! Information Channel Menu]
Weather Indicator **Manual Update** **Yes**

Advanced

- Hiding Information window for new received info
- Changing Display Size
- Changing scroll unit
- Copying text
- Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby
- Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates
- Hiding Information window for weather updates (And more on P.10-18)



Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Downloading e-Books

1  ➔ **メニューリスト** ➔ 

2 **書籍・ブック・写真集** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

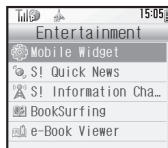
Note

- Alternatively, visit SH-web to download e-Books.


e-Book Viewer

Read XPDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1  ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ 



Entertainment Menu

2 **e-Book Viewer** ➔ 

- e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, **BookSurfing** ➔ 

- BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card

- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Advanced

-  ● Copying text ● Opening non-831SH e-Books (Library) ● Using Library (P.10-19)



Using S! Friend's Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

- Save and organize members in Groups.
- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set Connection status to **Online** beforehand.

First S! Friend's Status Use

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book; Status, Availability and Comment are sent to the members.



1 (Long)



2 Yes



3 Yes

4 Phone Book

5 Select entry Select phone number



- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

6 Yes

- Registration request is sent to the number.

When Request is Accepted

- An acceptance notice arrives; My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

Direct Entry

In 4, Add New Entry Enter phone number

Advanced

- Adding members
- Deleting members
- Moving members
- Renaming Groups
- Rejecting requests
- Updating manually
- Opening notices
- Sending My Details image (And more on P.10-19 - 10-20)

Opening Member Status

- 1 (Long) Select Group



- 2 Select member



When Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

- 1 (Long) 私の状況



My Status Window

- 2 Select Status, e.g., ごきげん



Status Template Window

- 3 Select new Status
- 4 Select Availability, e.g., Answer OK Select new Availability

- 5 <Add Comment>
- Enter text

- 6 Update starts

Changing Connection Status

[My Status Window] Online (or Offline) Select status

Changing Status Icon/Label

[Status Template Window] Select Status Status Icon or Status Label Select Pictogram or enter text

Changing Availability Settings at Once

In 4, Answer Status Select new Answer Status From 5

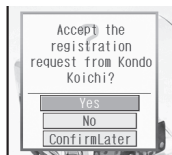
Editing My Status Name

[My Status Window] Edit Name Edit



Receiving Request from Unsaved Numbers

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.



1 Yes →

- Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

Rejecting

In 1, No → → Yes →

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
- For **Confirm Later**, Information window opens.

Creating Status Templates

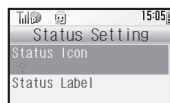
Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.



1 In Status Template window, → New Entry →

2 Enter name →

3 <未定> →



4 Status Icon → → Select Pictogram →

5 Status Label → → Enter text → →

6 Repeat 3 - 5 → → Saved

Saving to Data Folder

[Status Template Window] Select template → → Save to DF → → Save here →

Loading Templates via Data Folder

[Status Template Window] → Add Template → → Select template →

Renaming Templates

[Status Template Window] Select template → → Edit Temp. Name → → Enter name →

Advanced

- Resetting templates (P.10-20)



Using S! Circle Talk



Use handset like a walkie-talkie to speak to multiple parties simultaneously.

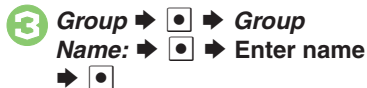
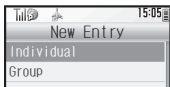
- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.


Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:








- When registering a member for the first time, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press , then skip ahead to .



- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.
- Repeat **4** -  to add members.



Saving as Individuals

In , **Individual**    -  **Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List**

In , **Members List**   **Select member**   

- Omit  when **Individual** is selected in .

Advanced

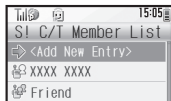
-   Editing individual members  Editing Groups (P.10-20)



Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:
Set My Status to **Online** first (P.10-9).

1





2 Select member or Group ➔

3 ➔ Transmission starts

- S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.
- Loudspeaker activates automatically.

Direct Entry


Enter phone number ➔  ➔  ➔
Transmission starts

S! Circle Talk Operations

■ Speaking

1 Press and hold when *Press and Hold* appears ➔ You have the floor



- :My Turn appears when you have the floor.

2 Keep holding to speak ➔ Release ➔ Floor is released

- Warning tone sounds before time limit.

Incoming Calls during S! Circle Talk

- Incoming calls are rejected. Set handset to exit S! Circle Talk to answer incoming calls as needed.

Canceling Loudspeaker

During S! Circle Talk, 





- To reactivate, follow these steps:
 ➔ While message appears, 

■ Exiting S! Circle Talk

1 ➔ Connection ends

- S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.


Rejoining S! Circle Talk

/  ➔ Select most recent S! Circle Talk record ➔  ➔ Rejoin Circle Talk ➔ 



- An error message appears when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

1 While handset is ringing/ vibrating, ➔ S! Circle Talk starts

- Alternatively, press .
- S! Circle Talk Operations: left

Advanced

-  Disabling Loudspeaker
-  Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (P.10-20)



Blogging

Save blog details to view or update blogs easily on handset.

Saving Blog Details

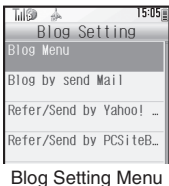
Setup for Posting via Mail

Follow these steps to save blog name and address for posting:

- 1 → **Communication** → → **Blog Tool** →



- 2 **Add New Entry** →



- 3 **Blog Menu** → → **Enter name** →

- 4 **Blog by send Mail** →



Blog Setting Menu (Mail)

- 5 **Blog's Email Address** → → **Enter mail address** →

- 6 →

Saving Title/Text for Posts

After 5, **Blog's Title** or **Blog's Text**

- → **Enter title or text** → → 6

- Saved title/text is entered automatically when posting.

Setting Image Size for Posting

- After 5, **Picture Size** → → **Select size** → → 6

Setup for Posting via the Internet

Save URL for Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser, or both.

- 1 In **Blog Setting** menu, **Refer/Send by Yahoo! Keitai** or **Refer/Send by PC Site Browser** →



- 2 **Blog's URL** → → **Enter URL** →

- 3 **Refer Blog's URL** → → **Enter URL** →

- 4 →

Advanced

- Editing entries Deleting entries (P.10-21)



Posting to Blogs

Complete setup for posting via mail/Internet beforehand.

Posting via Mail

1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ 

2 *Blog by send Mail* ➔ 

- S! Mail Composition window opens with address entered.
- Omit **2** if no URL is saved for posting.

3 Complete message ➔ 

Posting via the Internet

1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ 

2 *Blog by send Browser* ➔ 

- Page of URL saved in *Blog's URL* opens.
- Omit **2** if no address is saved for posting.
- If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URL is Saved for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

After **2**, select browser ➔ 

Opening Blog Page

1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ 

- Page of URL saved in *Refer Blog's URL* opens.
- If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URL is Saved for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser


After **1**, select browser ➔ 



Mobile Widget	
■ Managing	
Opening properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Widget Contents → ● → Select widget ☰ → Details → ● ● Select widget other than <i>S!速報ニュース!</i>ともだち状況
■ Widget History	
Opening widget notification history	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> [Start Here] ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Widget History → ● → See below
	<p>Showing All Text</p> <p>Select record → ☰ → View full text → ●</p>
	<p>Deleting a Record</p> <p>Select record → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p>Deleting All Records</p> <p>Select record → ☰ → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p>
■ Settings	
Canceling automatic updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Auto Refresh → ● → Off → ●
Receiving updates automatically while abroad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → AutoConnect Abroad → ● → On → ●
Disabling widget notifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Notification Setting → ● → Off → ●

Disabling cookies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Cookies → ● → Disabled → ●
Deleting cookies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Delete Cookies → ● → Yes → ●

■ Operations in Standby

Logging in to Yahoo!JAPAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☰ → ☰ → Yahoo!JAPAN log in → ● ● Follow onscreen instructions. ● To log out, select Yahoo!JAPAN log out in the above steps.
Viewing widget-related information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☰ → ☰ → Information → ●
Reversing icon selection order with 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☰ → ☰ → Move Focus(Reverse) → ● ● To cancel, select Move Focus(Order).
Slowing pointer speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☰ → ☰ → Cursor Speed → ● → Slow → ●

■ Sheets

Editing sheet names	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> [Start Here] ☰ → ☰ → Sheet Settings → ● → Change Sheet Name → ● → See below
	<p>Renaming</p> <p>Select sheet → ● → Enter name → ●</p>
	<p>Resetting All Sheet Names</p> <p>☰ → Yes → ●</p>



Locking sheets	<p>Start Here <i>Sheet Settings</i> <i>Set Sheet Lock</i> <i>Enter Handset Code</i> </p> <p>➔ See below</p> <p>Activating Lock Select sheet <i>On</i> </p>
	<p>Changing Method for Temporary Access <i>Unlock Method</i> <i>No Password</i> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press , then select and press to unlock sheet temporarily.
<p>■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Quick News)</p>	
Adding news items	<p> Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget <i>Operation</i> <i>Contents Menu</i> <i>Add News</i> <i>S! Quick News List</i> <i>登録はこちら</i> <i>Yes</i> <i>Select genre</i> <i>Select item</i> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.
Changing news scroll speed	<p> Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget <i>Operation</i> <i>Contents Menu</i> <i>News Display</i> <i>News Speed</i> <i>Select speed</i> </p>
Showing unread news only	<p> Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget <i>Operation</i> <i>Contents Menu</i> <i>News Display</i> <i>Target News</i> <i>Unread Only</i> </p>
Showing news images	<p> Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget <i>Operation</i> <i>Contents Menu</i> <i>News Display</i> <i>Display Image</i> <i>On</i> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available when only S! Quick News area is set to appear on the Panel.

■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Friend's Status)

Assigning members	<p>When Pattern Setting is Not <i>Friend's Status(List)</i> Use to select member field <i>Operation</i> <i>Contents Menu</i> <i>Assign Member</i> <i>Select category</i> <i>Select entry/member</i> </p>
	<p>When Pattern Setting is <i>Friend's Status(List)</i> Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget <i>Operation</i> <i>Contents Menu</i> <i>Assign Member</i> <i>Select category</i> <i>Select entry/member</i> <i>(Empty)</i> </p>
Managing members	<p>Start Here Use to select member <i>Operation</i> <i>Contents Menu</i> See below</p>
	<p>Deleting Members <i>Delete</i> <i>Yes</i> </p>
	<p>Changing Member Order <i>Move</i> <i>(Up)</i> or <i>(Down)</i> </p>
	<p>Changing Member Icons <i>Change Icon</i> <i>Select Pictogram</i> </p>



S! Quick News

■ Opening/Updating Items

Updating S! Quick News list automatically	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Automatic Update</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select interval or choose On</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If a confirmation appears, press <input type="checkbox"/>. • When Special is set to <i>On</i>, items are updated every four hours. • When General is set to <i>On</i>, items are updated once a day. • To cancel automatic update, choose <i>Off</i> and press <input type="checkbox"/>. • Updating items may incur high charges. • Only available in Japan.
Checking update schedule	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Check Schedule</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Deleting S! Quick News items	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Start Here</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News List</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>See below</i> </p> <p>One Entry</p> <p><i>一件</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>All Entries</p> <p><i>全件</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="checkbox"/></p>
Resetting S! Quick News List and S! Loop List	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Delete S! Quick News Lists</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not available during automatic updates.

■ S! Loop

Updating S! Loop items manually	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Start Here</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Loop List</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>See below</i> </p> <p>One Entry</p> <p><i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>更新</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>一件</i> → <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>All Entries</p> <p><i>更新</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>全件</i> → <input type="checkbox"/></p>
Updating S! Loop list automatically	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Automatic Update</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Loop</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>On</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Items are updated about four times a day. • Only available in Japan.
Deleting S! Loop items	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Start Here</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Loop List</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>See below</i> </p> <p>One Entry</p> <p><i>一件</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>All Entries</p> <p><i>全件</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="checkbox"/></p>
■ Other	
Changing background image	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Change Skin</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select pattern</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Accessing source sites	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select list</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select title</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select title</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Yes</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Disabling image download	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Show Image</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Off</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>



S! Information Channel

■ Receiving Information

Hiding Information window for new received info	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Notification → ● → Off → ●
Requesting re-delivery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Get Latest Contents → ● → Yes → ●

■ Information Pages

Changing Display Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On a page, [Ⓜ] → Settings → ● → Display Size → ● → Select size → ●
Changing scroll unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On a page, [Ⓜ] → Settings → ● → Scroll Unit → ● → Select unit → ●
Copying text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On a page, [Ⓜ] → Copy Text → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●
Saving files to Data Folder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On a page, [Ⓜ] → Save Items → ● → Select file → ● → Save → ● → Enter name → ● → Save here → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Some files are saved automatically.
Opening page properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On a page, [Ⓜ] → Page Information → ●

■ Weather Indicators

Checking weather forecast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Weather → ●
Changing weather forecast page font size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On a page, [Ⓜ] → Settings → ● → Font Size → ● → Select size → ●
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Standby Setting → ● → Off → ●
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Icon Update → ● → Off → ●
Hiding Information window for weather updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → S! Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Weather Notif. → ● → Off → ●



e-Books	
Copying text	In open page, → 文字列を北' - → → Select first character → → Highlight text range →
Opening non-831SH e-Books (Library)	→ Entertainment → → e-Book Viewer → → Select file → • Some files may not open.
Using Library	Start Here → Entertainment → → e-Book Viewer → → See below
	Adding Folders → New Folder → → Enter name →
	Switching Folders → Switch Folders → → Select folder →
	Renaming Folders/Files Select folder/file → → Change Name → → Enter name →
	Moving Files Select file → → Move → → Select folder → → Move here →
	Deleting Folders/Files Select folder/file → → Delete → → Yes →
	Opening File Properties Select file → → Details →

S! Friend's Status

Members/Groups

Adding members	(Long) → Select Group → Add Member → Select method → Select entry or enter phone number → Yes →
Deleting members	(Long) → Select Group → Select member → Registration Release → Yes → Yes → • Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.
Moving members	(Long) → Select Group → Select member → Change Group → Select target Group →
Renaming Groups	(Long) → Select Group → Edit Group Name → Enter name →
Rejecting requests	Start Here (Long) → Settings → Request Reply → See below
	Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers Confirm if Registered → • Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically.
	Rejecting All Requests Always Ignore → • Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.



■ Status/Availability

Saving custom Availability combinations	[Start Here] (Long) → [] → Settings → [] → Answer Status → [] → User Setting → [] → Select type → [] → Select Availability → [] → []
Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description	[Start Here] (Long) → [] → Settings → [] → Status Setting → [] → Select template → Select Status → [] → Status Icon → [] → Select Pictogram → [] → Status Label → [] → Enter text → [] → []

■ Status Templates

Resetting templates	[Start Here] (Long) → 私の状況 → [] → Select Status → []
	One Template [] Select template → [] → Reset → [] → Yes → []
	All Templates [] → Reset All → [] → Yes → []

■ Member Status & Notices

Updating manually	[Start Here] (Long) → [] → Settings → [] → Status Update → []
Opening notices	[Start Here] (Long) → [] → Status Notif. List → [] → Select notice → []

■ My Details

Sending My Details image	[Start Here] (Long) → [] → Select Group → Select member → [] → Send Image → [] → Yes → []
--------------------------	---

S! Circle Talk

■ Member List

Editing individual members	[Start Here] [] → Select member → [] → See below
	Replacing Members Edit → [] → [] → Select method → [] → Select entry → []
Editing Groups	Deleting Members Delete → [] → Yes → []
	[Start Here] [] → Select Group → [] → See below
Editing Groups	Editing Group Name/Members Edit → [] → Select target → [] → Edit/enter → [] → []
	Deleting Group Members Edit → [] → Select member → [] → Delete → [] → Yes → [] → []
	Deleting Groups Delete → [] → Yes → []

■ Settings

Disabling Loudspeaker	[] → [] → Loudspeaker → [] → Off → []
Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls	[] → [] → Incoming Calls → [] → Voice Calls or Video Calls → [] → Accept Calls → []



Blog Tool

Editing entries	<p> → <i>Communication</i> → → <i>Blog Tool</i> → → <i>Select entry</i> → → <i>Edit</i> → → <i>Select</i> item → → <i>Edit</i> → → </p> <p>• For <i>Blog Menu</i>, omit step of pressing after editing.</p>
Deleting entries	<p> → <i>Communication</i> → → <i>Blog Tool</i> → → <i>Select entry</i> → → <i>Delete</i> → → <i>Yes</i> → </p>





S! Friend's Status

? Cannot use S! Friend's Status

- Set IP Service Setting to **On**.

? Handset rejected a registration request automatically

- Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.

? Registration request arrived from a deleted member

- Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.

? Registration request was sent to a member automatically

- Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.

? Cannot create Status Templates

- Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

S! Circle Talk

? Cannot use S! Circle Talk

- Set IP Service Setting to **On**.

? S! Circle Talk starts automatically

- Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to **Auto Join**.

? Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

- Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to **Join NG**.

S! Quick News

? Cannot receive content updates

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash or S! Loop List update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.

Handset Security	11-2
Operations Security	11-2
Information Security.....	11-3
Additional Functions	11-4

11

Handset Security



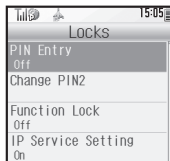
Operations Security

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

Auto	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed
Once	Lock immediately; setting is canceled once handset is unlocked
At Power On	Lock when handset is turned on; Handset Code entry window opens

- 1 **Settings** **In Phone menu, Locks**



Locks Menu

- 2 **Function Lock**
- 3 **Select item** **Enter Handset Code**

Unlocking Temporarily

While handset is locked, enter Handset Code

When Function Lock is Active

- Press corresponding key to turn handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 **In Locks menu, PIN Entry** **Switch On/Off**
- 2 **On** **Enter PIN**

Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except turning handset on, and activates IC Card Lock. For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-22) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-39).



Advanced

- Changing PINs Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear (P.11-4)

Information Security

Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book

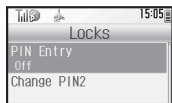
Calendar/Tasks

Yahoo! Keitai

Mail

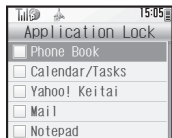
Notepad

- 1 → **Settings** → → In Phone menu, **Locks** →



Locks Menu

- 2 **Application Lock** →



- 3 **Select item** → (✓)
 • For Phone Book, select **No Refer** or **Refer** and press .

- 4 → **Enter Handset Code**
 →

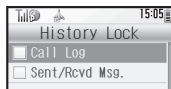
Temporary Access to Functions

- When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press .

History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

- 1 In Locks menu, **History Lock** →



- 2 **Select item** → (✓)

- 3 → **Enter Handset Code**
 →

Temporary Access to Records

- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press .

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

- 1 In Locks menu, **Show Secret Data** →

- 2 **On** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

When Show Secret Data is Active

- Predictive is not available for text entry.



PIN Entry

Changing PINs

Start Here → **Settings** → In Phone menu, **Locks** → See below

Changing PIN

PIN Entry → **Change PIN** → Enter current PIN → Enter new PIN → Re-enter new PIN

- Activate PIN Entry first.

Changing PIN2

Change PIN2 → Enter current PIN2 → Enter new PIN2 → Re-enter new PIN2

Secure Remote Lock

Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear

Start Here → **Settings** → In Phone menu, **Locks** → **Set Lock Message** → See below

Saving Message

Message → Enter Handset Code → Enter message → Yes

Checking Message

Check Message



Data Folder	12-2
Opening Files	12-3
Managing Files & Folders.....	12-4

Memory Card.....	12-5
Using Memory Card	12-5
Additional Functions.....	12-7
Troubleshooting.....	12-9

12

Data Folder & Memory Card



Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

■ Preset Folders

	Contents
Pictures*	Still images
DCIM	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to DCIM)
Ring Songs-Tones*	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli*	S! Applications
Widget*	Widgets
Music*	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos*	Video images
Lifestyle-Appli*	Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai®
Books*	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen*	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Decoration Call*	Decoration Call files created on handset or obtained via mail
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

*Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

Checking Memory Status

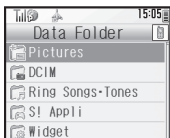
☐ ➔ Data Folder ➔ ☐ ➔ Memory Status ➔ ☐ ➔ Phone Memory or Memory Card ➔ ☐

- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.



Opening Files

1 → Data Folder →



- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press .

2 Select folder →

To open a sub folder, select it and press .



File List

3 Select file →



- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press .

Handling Open Images

- Press to enlarge, or press or to open next/previous ones. Press to rotate 90 degrees clockwise.

S! Mail Attachments

After , select file → → **Send/ Blog** → → **As Message** →

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

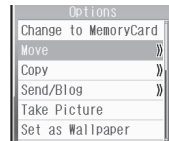
Copy Protected Files (≡ or ≠)

- Some functions may be unavailable.

Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1 In file list, select file →



2 Slide Show →

- Slide Show starts.

3 → Slide Show stops

Changing Interval

In , → **Speed** → → **Select speed** →

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press / or to advance or reverse frames.

Advanced

- Switching file list view
- Changing image quality
- Showing images in original size
- Changing Slide Show settings
- Using files as Wallpaper
- Using files as ringtones
- Using files as ringvideos (And more on P.12-7)

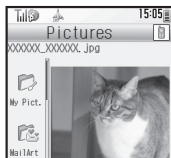


Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

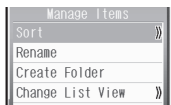
- 1 ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ ➔
Select folder ➔



File List

- 2 If **Download** is selected or folder is empty, skip ahead to 4.

- 3 **Manage Items** ➔



- 4 **Create Folder** ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔

Moving/Copying Files

Some files may not be moved/copied.

- 1 In file list, select file ➔
- 2 **Move or Copy** ➔ ➔
Phone or Memory Card ➔
 - For still images, select **Pictures** or **Mail Art** and press .
- 3 Select folder ➔
- 4 **Move here or Copy here** ➔

Selecting Multiple Files

- 1 In file list,
- 2 Select file ➔
 - Repeat 2 as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with and press .)

Hiding Folders

Restrict access to created folders.

Only handset folders can be hidden.

- 1 In file list, select folder ➔
- 2 **Set Secret** ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

Accessing Secret Folders (Unlock Temporarily)

[File List] ➔ **Unlock Temporarily**
➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

Canceling Secret

Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select folder ➔ ➔ **Unset Secret** ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

Advanced

- Renaming folders Opening file properties Renaming files Sorting files Deleting files & created folders Handling SVG files (P.12-8)

Using Memory Card

Use microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 831SH. Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.15-22** "microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility."

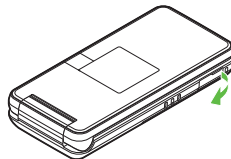
Important Memory Card Usage Notes

- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

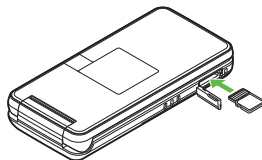
Inserting & Removing

Turn handset power off first.

1 Open cover

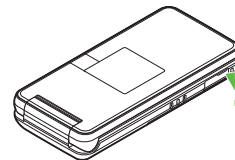


2 Insert card



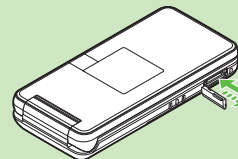
- With terminal side up, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

3 Close cover



If Appears after Power On

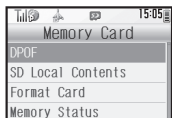
- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.
- #### Removing Memory Card
- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.



Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

- 1   **Settings**   **Connectivity**  **Memory Card** 





- 2 **Format Card**   **Yes**  

- Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

- 3 **Enter Handset Code**  











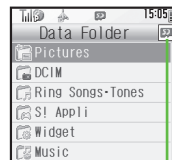
- 4 **Yes** 
 - To cancel, choose **No** and press .

Precaution

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.






Opening Memory Card Files

- 1   **Data Folder**  
- 2   **Change to MemoryCard**  





 appears

- Memory Card Data Folder opens.

- 3 **Select folder**  
- To open a sub folder, select it and press .
- 4 **Select file**  

Advanced

-   Using HTML files on Memory Card (P.12-8)



File/Folder View Settings	
Switching file list view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Manage Items</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Change List View</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select option</i> ➔ ●
Changing image quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Image Quality</i> (<i>Picture Quality</i> for Flash® files) ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select quality</i> ➔ ●
Showing images in original size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Switch Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Original Size</i> ➔ ●
Changing Slide Show settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Slide Show</i> ➔ ● ➔ ➔ <i>See below</i>
	<p>Playing Once</p> <p><i>Repeat</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Playing Music</p> <p><i>BGM Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Switch On/Off</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ ●</p>
Hiding Softkeys in image view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ ● ➔ ➔ <i>SW GuideDisplay</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔ ●

Using Files/Folders	
Using files as Wallpaper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Set as Wallpaper</i> ➔ ● ➔ ● For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press .
Using files as ringtones	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Set as Ringtone</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select item</i> ➔ ● ● If prompted, enter ring time and press . ● If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.
Using files as ringvideos	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Videos</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Set as Ring Video</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select item</i> ➔ ● ● If prompted, enter ring time and press .
Saving Phone Book entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Save to Phone Book</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>As New Entry</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Complete other fields</i> ➔ ● To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.
Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ ➔ <i>Take Picture, Record Video or Record Voice</i> ➔ ●



Managing Files/Folders

Renaming folders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Data Folder</i> • <i>Select folder</i> • <i>Select folder</i> <i>Manage Items</i> • <i>Rename</i> • <i>Enter name</i> • • Assign different names to folders within a layer.
Opening file properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Data Folder</i> • <i>Select folder</i> • <i>Select file</i> <i>Details</i> •
Renaming files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Data Folder</i> • <i>Select folder</i> • <i>Select file</i> <i>Manage Items</i> • <i>Rename</i> • <i>Enter name</i> •
Sorting files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Data Folder</i> • <i>Select folder</i> • <i>Manage Items</i> • <i>Sort</i> • <i>Select method</i> • • To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.
Deleting files & created folders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Start Here</i> • <i>Data Folder</i> • <i>Select folder</i> • <i>See below</i>
	<p>Single Files</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Select file</i> <i>Delete</i> • <i>Yes</i> • <p>Folder & Files Within</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Select folder</i> <i>Delete</i> • <i>Enter Handset Code</i> • <i>Yes</i> •

Handling SVG files

Line Scroll



Page Scroll

(Up), *(Down)*, *(Right)*, *(Left)*

Zoom

(Zoom out), *(Zoom in)*

Rotate

(Counterclockwise), *(Clockwise)*

Key Action Mode



Default View



Memory Card

Using HTML files on Memory Card

- *Settings* • *Connectivity* *Memory Card* • *SD Local Contents* • *Select title* •



Managing Files/Folders



Cannot copy files

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)



Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.



Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 241 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.



Cannot use some characters in file/folder names

- Single-byte Symbols \backslash , /, :, ;, ,, <, >, /, ?, * and " are not supported.



Infrared	13-2
Transferring Files via Infrared	13-3
IC Transmission	13-5
Transferring Files via IC Transmission	13-6
Mass Storage	13-7
Connecting to PC	13-7

Backup	13-8
Basics	13-8
Backup & Restore	13-9
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)	13-10
About SAB.....	13-10
Backup & Restore	13-12
Additional Functions	13-13
Troubleshooting	13-15

13

Connectivity & File Backup



Infrared

Wirelessly transfer files between 831SH and compatible devices.

Transferable Files

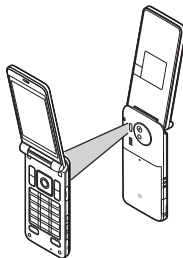
Phone Book	Received Msg.
Calendar	Sent Messages
Tasks	Drafts
Notepad	Templates
Bookmarks	Data Folder

- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.



- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)




Transferring Files via Infrared

Receiving Files

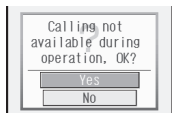
1 (Long)



 appears

- Infrared is activated. (Alternatively, activate it via Main Menu.)
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
- To cancel infrared, Long Press .

2 Connection request arrives



Request Window


3 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

Subsequent Operations

■ One File Transfer

Yes    Yes  

- If save location confirmation appears, select a location and press .

■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes    Enter Handset Code 

  Enter Authorization Code 

  As New Items  

■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes    Enter Handset Code 

  Enter Authorization Code 

  Delete All & Save    Yes  

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Advanced

-   Activating Infrared via Main Menu (P.13-13)

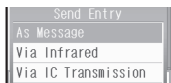


Sending Files

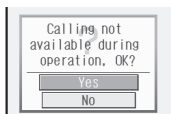
One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

- 1  ➔ **Select entry** ➔  ➔ **Send Entry** ➔ 










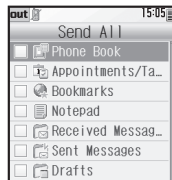
- 2 **Via Infrared** ➔ 





- 3 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts**
- When finished, entry search window returns.


All File Transfer

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ 
Connectivity ➔ **Infrared** ➔ 
- 2 **Send All** ➔ 
- 3 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 




- 4 **Select item** ➔  (/✓) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ 
- 5 **Enter Authorization Code** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts** ➔ 

Sending Phone Book

- In 5, follow these steps to select whether to send Phone Book Pictures:
Yes or No ➔ 

Advanced

-  ● Sending My Details ● Sending non-Phone Book files (P.13-13)



IC Transmission

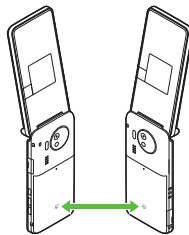
Wirelessly transfer files between 831SH and compatible devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.13-2**.
- Cancel IC Card Lock beforehand.
- Disconnect Headphones, USB Cable and AC Charger beforehand.

Getting Started

IC Transmission Precautions

Align  logos of both devices.



Align  logos

Keep  logos aligned during transfer.

Transfer Options


One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for IC transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Advanced

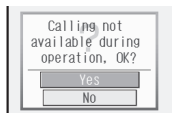
-  Disabling one file reception (**P.13-13**)



Transferring Files via IC Transmission

Receiving Files

1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.

2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press \square .

Subsequent Operations

■ One File Transfer

Yes \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \square

- If save location confirmation appears, select a location and press \square .

■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Enter Handset Code \rightarrow
 \square \rightarrow Enter Authorization Code \rightarrow
 \square \rightarrow As New Items \rightarrow \square

■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Enter Handset Code \rightarrow \square
 \rightarrow Enter Authorization Code \rightarrow \square \rightarrow
 Delete All & Save \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \square

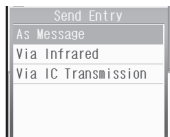
- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Sending Files

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1 \square \rightarrow Select entry \rightarrow \square \rightarrow
 Send Entry \rightarrow \square



2 Via IC Transmission \rightarrow \square



3 Yes \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Transfer starts

All File Transfer

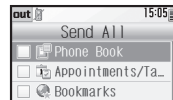
1 \square \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \square \rightarrow \square
 Connectivity \rightarrow IC
 Transmission \rightarrow \square



IC Transmission Menu

2 Send All \rightarrow \square

3 Yes \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Enter Handset
 Code \rightarrow \square



4 Select item \rightarrow \square (\square / \checkmark) \rightarrow
 Complete selection \rightarrow \square

5 Enter Authorization Code \rightarrow
 \square \rightarrow Transfer starts \rightarrow \square

Sending Phone Book

- In \square , follow these steps to select whether to send Phone Book Pictures: Yes or No \rightarrow \square

Advanced

- \square Sending My Details
- \square Sending non-Phone Book files (P.13-13)



Connecting to PC

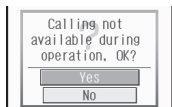
Accessing Memory Card from PC

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

- USB Cable may be purchased separately.
- If handset is connected to a PC via USB Cable, disconnect it first.

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ 
Connectivity ➔ **USB Mode**
➔ 

2 **Mass Storage** ➔ 



3 **Yes** ➔ 

4 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

- Use PC to access Memory Card.

5  ➔ **Yes** ➔  ➔ 
Connection ends

- Safely remove handset (recognized as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.

- **Utility Software**
<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/>

Mobile Data Communication Fees

- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.



Basics

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.

Supported Items

Select items to back up, or transfer all at once.

Items with * are selectable at once via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Phone Book*	Drafts*
Calendar*	Templates
Tasks*	Contents Keys
Bookmarks*	Data Folder
Notepad*	S! Town
Received Msg.*	Mail Groups
Sent Messages*	User Dictionary

Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Transferring All Items

- Use blank Memory Card for **Backup All Items**. Do not use the card to save other files after **Backup All Items**; backed up content may not be restored properly.

Contents Keys

- Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.

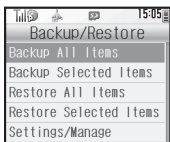


Backup & Restore

Handset to Memory Card

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Connectivity** → **Backup/Restore** →



Backup/Restore Menu

- 2 **Backup Selected Items** → → **Enter Handset Code** →
- 3 **Yes** →
- 4 **Select item** → (/) → **Complete selection**
 - For **Phone Book**, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

- 5 → **Yes** →
 - To cancel, press .

- 6 **Backup complete** → →

Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 4, → **Select option** → →
From 5

Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 4, → **Check All or Uncheck All** →

Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items:

Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Contents Keys).

- 1 **In Backup/Restore menu, Restore Selected Items** → → **Enter Handset Code** →
- 2 **Yes** →
- 3 **Select item** → (/) → **Complete selection**

- 4
 - If no file list appears, skip ahead to 7.

- 5 **Select file** →
 - Repeat 5 to complete selection.

- 6

- 7 **Yes** →
 - To cancel, press .

- 8 **Restore complete** → →

Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 3, → **Select option** → →
From 4

Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 3, → **Check All or Uncheck All** →

Changing Restoration Method

After 3, select item → → **Change to Add Mode or Chg. to Overwrite Mode** → → From 4

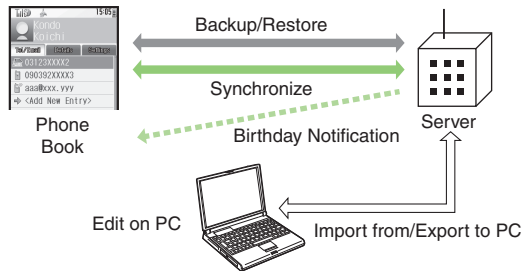
Advanced

- Backing up all items ● Encoding data for backup ● Restoring all items ● Deleting backup files (P.13-13)



About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.13-11).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see the corresponding Website (P.15-22).
- Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/ Restore	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB ¹
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book ²
Synchronize	Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB ³
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB ⁴
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book ⁵
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice ⁶	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification ⁷	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification ⁸	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	Tomodachi Email Filter ⁹	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

¹ Any existing SAB content is deleted.

² Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

³ If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

⁴ Unrelated SAB changes remain.

⁵ Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

⁶ Access this function via handset or a PC.

⁷ Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.

⁸ Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.

⁹ Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.



Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese) via Yahoo! Keitai.



Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.

- User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.



Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

■ Unsynchronizable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Vibration

■ Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting *Synchronize*, *Sync from Client* or *Backup* deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting *Synchronize*, *Sync from Server* or *Restore* deletes all Phone Book content.

■ Phone Book ⇄ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

■ Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
- **Other 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
- **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**
Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

■ When Double Number is Active

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

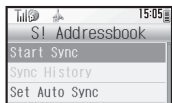


Backup & Restore

Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Any existing SAB content is deleted.

- 1 → **Phone** → → **S! Addressbook Backup** →



S! Addressbook Menu

- 2 **Start Sync** → → **Backup** →

- 3 **Yes** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

- Backup starts; when completed, details appear.

- 4 → **Backup complete**

Canceling Backup

- **Yes** →

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, **Start Sync** → → **Restore** →

- 2 **Yes** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

- Restore starts; when completed, details appear.

- 3 → **Restore complete**

Canceling Restore

- **Yes** →

Synchronizing Phone Book

Synchronize Options:

Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB
Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronization is performed via Synchronize regardless of selection.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, **Start Sync** → → **Select option** →

- 2 **Yes** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

- Synchronization starts; when completed, details appear.

- 3 → **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization

- **Yes** →

Advanced

- Confirming user ID & password Auto synchronization Opening log (P.13-14)



Infrared	
Activating Infrared via Main Menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Connectivity → Infrared → ☐ → Switch On/Off → ☐ → On(3 min.) → ☐
Sending My Details	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → [iO] → ☐ → Send My Card → ☐ → Via Infrared → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In file list, select file → ☐ → Send (or Send/Blog) → ☐ → Via Infrared → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Transfer starts
IC Transmission	
Disabling one file reception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Connectivity → IC Transmission → ☐ → Recv. Forwarded → ☐ → Off(Disabled) → ☐
Sending My Details	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → [iO] → ☐ → Send My Card → ☐ → Via IC Transmission → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In file list, select file → ☐ → Send (or Send/Blog) → ☐ → Via IC Transmission → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Transfer starts

Backup

Backup & Restore

Backing up all items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Connectivity → Backup/Restore → ☐ → Backup All Items → ☐ → Enter Handset Code → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Backup complete → ☐ → ☐
Encoding data for backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Connectivity → Backup/Restore → ☐ → Settings/Manage → ☐ → Encode Settings → ☐ → Select item → ☐ → On → ☐ • Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.
Restoring all items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Connectivity → Backup/Restore → ☐ → Restore All Items → ☐ → Enter Handset Code → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Yes → ☐ → Restore complete → ☐ → ☐
Backup Files	
Deleting backup files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ → Settings → ☐ → ☐ Connectivity → Backup/Restore → ☐ → Settings/Manage → ☐ → File Management → ☐ → Select item → ☐ → Select file → ☐ (☐/☑) → Complete selection → ☐ → Yes → ☐



S! Addressbook Back-up

Confirming user ID & password	<p>☐ → <i>メニューリスト</i> → ☐ → <i>My SoftBank</i> → ☐ → <i>English</i> → ☐ → <i>Password confirmation for S! Address Book</i> → ☐ → Follow onscreen instructions</p>
Auto synchronization	<p>Start Here ☐ → <i>Phone</i> → ☐ → <i>S! Addressbook Backup</i> → ☐ → <i>Set Auto Sync</i> → ☐ → Enter Handset Code → ☐ → See below</p> <p>Activating <i>Set On/Off</i> → ☐ → <i>On</i> → ☐</p> <p>Changing Auto Sync Frequency <i>Set On/Off</i> → ☐ → <i>On</i> → ☐ → <i>Set Frequency</i> → ☐ → <i>Select frequency</i> → ☐ → <i>Enter/select date/time/day of the week</i> → ☐</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For <i>After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)</i>, omit steps for date, time, etc. <p>Changing Auto Sync Command <i>Set On/Off</i> → ☐ → <i>On</i> → ☐ → <i>Set Sync Mode</i> → ☐ → <i>Select command</i> → ☐</p>
Opening log	<p>☐ → <i>Phone</i> → ☐ → <i>S! Addressbook Backup</i> → ☐ → <i>Sync History</i> → ☐ → <i>Select record</i> → ☐</p>



File Transfer

Some files are not received

- If storage limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.

Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared is *On*

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.

Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
 - Category, Tone/Video, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
 - Alarm Tone/Video, Secret, S! Friend's Status

Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

Messages are not saved properly on handset

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Messages received via One File Transfer are saved to Other Documents folder and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.
- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.

Messages are not saved properly on recipient devices

- Mail Notices are saved as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- When sending messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, Spam Folder messages may be saved to the incoming message folder.
- When sending Draft messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

Infrared

Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with a soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.



Backup & Restore

? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

? Some files are not restored

- If storage limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

? Messages are not saved properly

- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are all backed up as a single file.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

■ Exporting Backed Up Data to Other SoftBank Handsets

? Messages are not saved properly

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- When restoring Draft messages, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

■ Importing Data Backed Up on Other SoftBank Handsets

? Messages are not saved properly

- Messages may not be restored depending on the size.
- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail.



Date & Time	14-2
Clock View/Settings	14-2
Display & Illumination	14-3
Language.....	14-3
Image & Text.....	14-3
Display & Key Illumination	14-3
External Display.....	14-4
Standby Display.....	14-4
Key Illumination	14-4

Ringtones & Sounds	14-5
Handset Response.....	14-5
System Sound.....	14-5
Additional Sound Settings	14-5
Connectivity	14-6
Network	14-6
IP Service.....	14-7
Location Information.....	14-7
Reset.....	14-8
Restoring Default Settings.....	14-8

14























































Handset Customization



Date & Time Settings

Clock View/Settings

[Start Here](#)   Settings   In Phone menu, Date & Time  

Setting the date and time	Set Date/Time   Enter the year  Enter the month  Enter the day  Enter the time 
Correcting Clock manually	Time Correction   Manual   Yes 
Disabling auto Clock correction	Time Correction   Auto Corr. Setting   Off 
Setting auto Clock correction timing	Time Correction   Auto Corr. Setting   On   Select item   ( / )   
Activating Daylight Saving	Daylight Saving   On 
Changing Time Zone	Set Time Zone    Select area 
Adding custom time zone	Set Time Zone    Enter city name    + or -   Enter time difference 
Changing time format to 12 hour	Time Format   12 Hour 
Changing date format	Date Format   Select option 
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	Calendar Format   Monday-Sunday 



Display & Illumination Settings 1

Language

[Start Here](#) [] → **Settings** [] → [] → Phone menu

Switching interface between Japanese and English

Language or 言語選択 [] → [] → **English** or 日本語 [] → []

Image & Text

[Start Here](#) [] → **Settings** [] → [] → In Phone menu, **Display** [] → []

Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics [] → [] → **Select item** [] → [] → **Preset Animation (or Pattern 1 to Pattern 3)** [] → []

Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics [] → [] → **Select item** [] → [] → **Select folder** [] → [] → **Select image** [] → [] → **Specify display area** [] → []
 • Some images may be usable without specifying display area.

Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics [] → [] → **Select item** [] → [] → **Customized Screen** [] → [] → []
 • Not available for **Power On** or **Power Off**.

Changing font of numbers entered in Standby

Dial Number [] → [] → **Select pattern** [] → []

Showing a message each time handset is turned on

Greeting Message [] → [] → **Edit Message** [] → [] → **Enter message** [] → [] → [] → **Switch On/Off** [] → [] → **On** [] → []

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, press [v] in System Graphics menu to switch modes.

Display & Key Illumination

[Start Here](#) [] → **Settings** [] → [] → In Phone menu, **Display** [] → []

Disabling display transition effects

Display Effects [] → [] → **Off** [] → []

Changing Display/Keypad Backlight illumination time

Backlight [] → [] → **Time Out** [] → [] → **Select time** [] → []

Changing Display Brightness

Backlight [] → [] → **Brightness** [] → [] → **Adjust level** [] → []

Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off

Display Saving [] → [] → **Select period** [] → []



⌘ Display & Illumination Settings 2

External Display

[Start Here](#) **Settings** In Phone menu, **Display** **External Display**

Changing inactivity time after which External Display turns off

Duration **Select time**

Hiding new received messages

Messages **Not Display**

Hiding caller info

Caller Display **Off**

Changing Clock view

Display Date&Time **Select type**

Changing Clock font

Clock Type **Select pattern**

Standby Display

[Start Here](#) **Settings** In Phone menu, **Display** **Standby Display**

Changing Clock/Calendar

Clock/Calendar **Select type**

Showing Network service provider name in Standby

Show Operator Name **On**

Key Illumination

[Start Here](#) **Settings** **Phone menu**

Disabling Keypad light illumination

Set Key Light **Off**



🔧 Ringtone & Sound Settings

Handset Response

[Start Here](#) → **Settings** → **In Phone menu, Sounds & Alerts**

Changing ringtone volume	Volume → Select item → Adjust level
Selecting illumination option for incoming transmissions	Event Light → Select item → On, Link to Sound or Off
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed incoming transmissions	Status Light → Select item → On or Off
Answering calls with other keys	Any Key Answer → On • Use [0] - [9], [*], [#], ##, [M], [V], [A] or [C] in addition to [D].

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, press [v] in Volume menu or Event Light menu to switch modes.

System Sound

[Start Here](#) → **Settings** → **In Phone menu, Sounds & Alerts**

Enabling Keypad Tones	System Sounds → Keypad Tones → Select tone
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	System Sounds → S! Circle Talk → Select tone
Changing other System Sounds	System Sounds → Select item → Tone → Select folder → Select tone/file • For files with limited usage period, choose Yes and press [D].
Disabling System Sounds	System Sounds → Select item → Tone → Off • Not available for S! Circle Talk .
Changing System Sound duration	System Sounds → Select item → Duration → Select/enter time • Not available for Keypad Tones or S! Circle Talk .
Changing System Sound volume	Volume → General Volume → Adjust level

Additional Sound Settings

[Start Here](#) → **Settings** → **Phone menu**






















































Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	Ringer Output → Earphone
Activating Speaker surround	Sounds & Alerts → Surround → On



Connectivity Settings 1

Network

Start Here  ➔ Settings  ➔ Network 

Selecting a Network manually	Select Network  ➔ Manual  ➔ Select Network 
Adding preferred Networks	Select Network  ➔ Set Preferred  ➔ Select location  ➔ Insert  ➔ Select Network 
Adding preferred Networks to the end	Select Network  ➔ Set Preferred  ➔ Add to End  ➔ Select Network 
Deleting preferred Networks	Select Network  ➔ Set Preferred  ➔ Select Network  ➔ Delete  ➔ 
Adding Networks	Select Network  ➔ Add New Network  ➔ Add  ➔ Enter country code  ➔ Enter Network code  ➔ Enter name  Select NW Type  ➔ Select type  • After selecting Add New Network and pressing  , Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press  again and proceed.
Editing Networks	Select Network  ➔ Add New Network  ➔ Select Network  ➔ Change  ➔ Edit in the same manner as adding Networks 
Deleting Networks	Select Network  ➔ Add New Network  ➔ Select Network  ➔ Delete  ➔ 
Switching Network services manually	Select Service  ➔ Manual  ➔ Select service 
Retrieving Network Information	Retrieve NW Info  ➔ Yes 
Checking Network status	Network Info  ➔ 
Editing access point names for communication with external devices	External Device  ➔ Select name  ➔ Edit 
Clearing access point names for communication with external devices	External Device  ➔  ➔ Reset  ➔ Enter Handset Code  ➔ Yes  ➔ 



⌘ Connectivity Settings 2

IP Service

[Start Here](#) → **Settings** → **In Phone menu, Locks**

Disabling IP Service

IP Service Setting → **Off** → **Enter Handset Code**

- When **Off**, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting are disabled.

Location Information

[Start Here](#) → **Settings** → **Network** → **Location Info**

Adding/editing Location Information destination URLs

URL Setting → **<Empty> (or select URL)** → **Edit** → **Enter URL**

- Default URL is not editable.

Specifying Location Information destination URL

URL Setting → **Select URL**

Viewing Location Information destination URL

URL Setting → **Select URL** → **Display**

Deleting Location Information destination URLs

URL Setting → **Select URL** → **Delete** → **Yes**

Hiding Location Information

Datum On/Off → **Off** → **Enter Handset Code**

Changing Location Information confirmation option

















Location Property → **Select option** → **Enter Handset Code**



Reset Settings

Restoring Default Settings

[Start Here](#)   **Settings**   **In Phone menu, Master Reset**  

Restoring default handset settings	<p>Reset Settings   Enter Handset Code   Yes   Yes  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Some default settings may not be restored.
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	<p>Reset All   Enter Handset Code   Yes   Yes  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) • Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications. • Handset Code returns to the default setting.

- A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.
- When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.



USIM Card	15-2
About USIM Card	15-2
USIM Card Installation.....	15-3
Battery	15-4
Battery Installation.....	15-4
Software Update	15-5
Troubleshooting	15-6
Key Assignments	15-8
Pager Codes	15-10
Pager Code List	15-10

Character Codes	15-11
Character Code List	15-11
Weather Indicators	15-17
Weather Indicator List	15-17
Specifications	15-18
Memory Card Structure & Contents ...	15-23
Menu List	15-24
Index	15-31
Warranty & Service	15-38
Customer Service	15-39

15

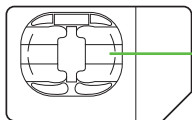
Appendix



About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions



IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-39).

USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card; both are **9999** by default.

PIN	Security Code to prevent unauthorized use of handset
PIN2	Required to clear Call Costs and to set Max Cost, etc.

PIN Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceling PIN Lock

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-39) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:

Enter PUK Code ➔ ➔ **Enter new PIN/PIN2** ➔ ➔ **Re-enter new PIN/PIN2** ➔

- Write down PUK code.

PUK Lock

- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-39) for recovery.

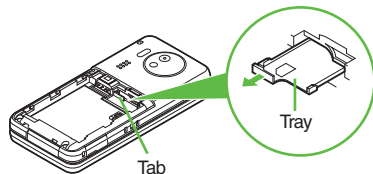


USIM Card Installation

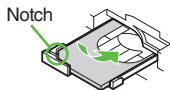
- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

Inserting

- 1 Remove battery (P.15-4)
- 2 Using Tab, pull out Tray as shown until it clicks



- 3 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing up



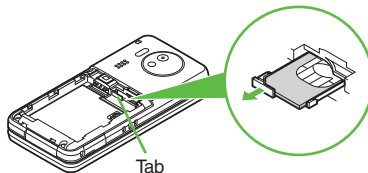
- 4 Push in Tray fully



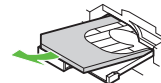
- Reinstall battery (P.15-4).

Removing

- 1 Remove battery
- 2 Using Tab, pull out Tray as shown until it clicks



- 3 Lift and slide out USIM Card as shown



- Reinstall battery.
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing® and S! Town may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.



Battery Installation

About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Lithium-ion Battery

- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

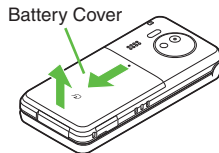


Li-ion00

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

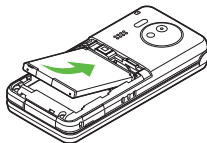
Inserting & Removing

1 Remove cover



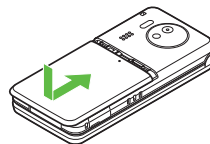
- Press and slide as shown.

2 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

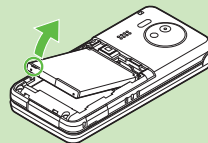
3 Close cover



- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

Removing

- Turn handset power off and lift battery as shown.



Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions

- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

Updating Software

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **In Phone menu, Software Update** ➔ 

2 **Software Update** ➔ 



- Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting Update Period (Japanese)


In , **Update Period** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Update Result

In , **Update Result** ➔ 

Scheduled Update


Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press  or wait a while for update to start.

When Updated

Update success notification appears and handset reboots.

After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

Update Result

While Information window appears, **Update Result** ➔ 





Reboot Failure

- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.15-39).



Troubleshooting

■ General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	Was  pressed long enough?	Press  longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.15-4).
Handset won't respond	Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry On ?	If On , PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
Insert USIM Card appears	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Turn power off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.
REFRESH appears and handset returns to Standby	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Keypad won't respond	Keypad Lock may be active ( appears).	Cancel Keypad Lock (P.11-19).
	Function Lock may be active ( appears).	Cancel Function Lock (P.11-2).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (P.11-3).
Cannot use Predictive	Show Secret Data may be active.	Cancel Show Secret Data.
Handset/AC Charger feels warm	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
Cannot access Memory Card files	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 831SH-formatted Memory Cards.
Clock settings are lost	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.



Charger/Battery

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery charges quickly	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges slowly	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
Battery won't charge	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.15-4).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce TV, SI Application, Media Player and Camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/ Backlight time, etc.



Key Assignments














Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
[1]	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@,/-1 □ (space)	1	1
[2]	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
[3]	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
[4]	たちつとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
[5]	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
[6]	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
[7]	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpars7	7	7
[8]	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8	8
[9]	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
[0]	わをんー ・	ワヲンー ・ ・ _1	0	0	0
[*:]	Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List ³				_____
[+;]	、。 # (line break) ? ! □ (space)		、。 # (line break) ?! □ (space)	#	_____

¹ - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

² Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.

³ May not be enterable in some windows.



Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion (up) ⁴	Cursor up			
	Conversion (down) ⁵	Cursor down ↓ (line break)			
	Cursor left				
	Cursor right				
	Change entry mode				
	Toggle case (for some characters)			_____	
	_____	Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case)			_____
	Delete one character				
	Cancel conversion	_____	Cancel conversion ⁶	_____	Delete code
 (Long)	Delete before or after cursor				
	Recover characters deleted with 				
	Re-convert ⁷	_____	Re-convert ^{6, 7}	_____	
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion	_____			
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion	_____			

⁴Cursor moves up except during conversion.

⁵Cursor moves down except during conversion.

⁶Available only in single-byte alphanumeric entry.

⁷Press  immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.



Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press **[R]** to switch immediately after character entry.

Double-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&	☺		*1
	8	や	(ゆ)	よ	*	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0

Single-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&	☺		*1
	8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	*	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	ヰ	ヱ	6	7	8	9	0

Double-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	ゞ					

Single-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				ヰ	ヱ					

*1 Press **[7][0]** to insert **↵** (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.

*2 Press **[8][0]** to toggle upper and lower case modes.



Character Code List

First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5
010											047	ゆ	よ	ら	り	れ	ろ	わ	161	葵	西	穉	悪	握	旭	葦	鯨	188	介	会	解	塊	壊	廻	怪	怪	悔		
011	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	048	あ	よ	ら	り	れ	ろ	わ	162	梓	压	幹	扱	宛	蛇	鮎	綯	189	恢	懐	戒	拐	壊	廻	怪	怪	悔		
012	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	050								163	帖	或	杏	拾	宛	按	暗	案	190											
013	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	051								164	靴								191											
014	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	052	オ	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	164										192											
015	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	053	コ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	165										193											
016	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	054	ソ	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	166										194											
017	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	055	ト	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	167										195											
018	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	056	ホ	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	168										196											
019	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	057	ポ	パ	ピ	プ	ペ	ポ	169										197											
020	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	058	コ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	170										198											
021	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	060		A	B	G	E	O	170										200											
022	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	061	K	M	N	D	H	I	171										201											
023	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	062	T	X	F	O	P	S	172										202											
024	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	063	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ω	π	173										203											
026	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	064	θ	κ	λ	μ	ξ	ω	174										204											
027	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	173										205											
028	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	070	A	B	G	E	O	175											206											
029	！	Space	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	。、	071	I	K	M	N	D	H	176										207											
031											072	И	К	М	Н	Д	Ж	177										208											
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	073	Т	Х	Ф	Χ	Ψ	Ω	178										209											
033											074	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	179										210											
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	075	б	в	г	д	е	ж	180										211											
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z		076	к	л	м	н	о	п	181										212											
036											077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	182										213											
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	078	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	182										214											
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	080							182										215											
039											081							183										216											
040											082							184										217											
041											083							184										218											
042																		185										219											
043																		186										220											
044																		187										221											
045																		187										222											
046																		187										222											



Character Codes

Table with 8 columns: First Three Digits, Last Digit, First Three Digits, Last Digit, First Three Digits, Last Digit, First Three Digits, Last Digit. It lists character codes for various digits (0-9) and provides corresponding characters for each code.






















First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5
363	つ									392	粘乃迺之	393	粘乃迺之	424	僻壁癖碧	449	ゆ									450	愉愈癒癒												
364	榧	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	柶	墜	稚	394	腦膿農規	393	腦膿農規	425	片篇編編	449	愉愈癒癒																						
365	漬	柶	鎚	痛	通	塚	柶	墜	稚	395	腦膿農規	393	腦膿農規	426	片篇編編	450	愉愈癒癒																						
366	嬢	柶	鎚	痛	通	塚	柶	墜	稚	396	腦膿農規	393	腦膿農規	426	片篇編編	451	悠愉愉愉																						
366	て									396	波派派派	397	波派派派	426	保鋪鋪鋪	452	悠愉愉愉																						
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	低	停	偵	397	排培培培	397	排培培培	427	保鋪鋪鋪	452	悠愉愉愉																						
368	梯	抵	挺	提	定	帝	底	廷	弟	398	陪陪陪陪	397	陪陪陪陪	428	稗堡堡堡	453	余揚揚揚																						
369	艇	抵	挺	提	定	帝	底	廷	弟	399	燥燥燥燥	399	燥燥燥燥	429	稗堡堡堡	453	余揚揚揚																						
370	的	笛	鄧	鼎	泥	擲	撤	撤	滴	400	燭燭燭燭	400	燭燭燭燭	430	蜂望望望	454	余揚揚揚																						
371	的	笛	鄧	鼎	泥	擲	撤	撤	滴	401	燭燭燭燭	401	燭燭燭燭	431	蜂望望望	455	余揚揚揚																						
372	鉄	典	填	展	撤	添	撤	撤	滴	402	拔半半半	402	拔半半半	432	蜂望望望	456	余揚揚揚																						
373	転	典	填	展	撤	添	撤	撤	滴	403	半半半半	403	半半半半	433	蜂望望望	456	余揚揚揚																						
373	と									404	煩煩煩煩	405	煩煩煩煩	436	本本本本	457	螺裸裸裸																						
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	斗	杜	渡	吐	兔	405	煩煩煩煩	405	煩煩煩煩	436	本本本本	458	螺裸裸裸																						
375	賭	塗	妬	屠	斗	杜	渡	吐	兔	406	卑否否否	406	卑否否否	437	味枚每哩	458	履李梨梨																						
376	怒	倒	党	徒	砥	唐	度	登	兔	407	卑否否否	407	卑否否否	438	樽樹亦方	459	履李梨梨																						
377	岩	島	鳩	徒	砥	唐	度	登	兔	408	卑否否否	408	卑否否否	439	樽樹亦方	460	履李梨梨																						
378	岩	島	鳩	徒	砥	唐	度	登	兔	409	卑否否否	409	卑否否否	440	樽樹亦方	461	履李梨梨																						
379	密	答	湯	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	410	卑否否否	410	卑否否否	440	樽樹亦方	462	履李梨梨																						
380	鏡	陶	頭	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	411	肘百評評	411	肘百評評	441	蜜湊湊湊	463	履李梨梨																						
382	撞	撞	洞	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	412	肘百評評	412	肘百評評	442	蜜湊湊湊	464	履李梨梨																						
383	撞	撞	洞	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	413	肘百評評	413	肘百評評	442	蜜湊湊湊	465	履李梨梨																						
384	撞	撞	洞	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	414	肘百評評	414	肘百評評	442	蜜湊湊湊	466	履李梨梨																						
385	撞	撞	洞	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	415	肘百評評	415	肘百評評	442	蜜湊湊湊	467	履李梨梨																						
386	撞	撞	洞	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	騰	415	肘百評評	415	肘百評評	442	蜜湊湊湊	468	履李梨梨																						
386	な									415	府不不不	416	府不不不	442	名命明盟	469	瑠皇淚淚																						
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	那	那	内	乍	雜	416	府不不不	416	府不不不	443	免棉綿綿	470	瑠皇淚淚																						
388	歌	難	汝	鍋	那	那	内	乍	雜	417	府不不不	417	府不不不	444	免棉綿綿	471	瑠皇淚淚																						
388	に									418	府不不不	418	府不不不	444	免棉綿綿	472	露勞勞勞																						
388	に									419	府不不不	419	府不不不	445	孟毛猛盲	473	露勞勞勞																						
388	に									420	府不不不	420	府不不不	446	孟毛猛盲	473	露勞勞勞																						
389	虹	廿	二	尼	式	迹	句	甸	肉	421	物粉粉粉	421	物粉粉粉	447	孟毛猛盲	473	露勞勞勞																						
390	如	尿	乳	入	任	妊	忍	認		422	物粉粉粉	422	物粉粉粉	447	孟毛猛盲	474	露勞勞勞																						
390	ぬ〜の									422	物粉粉粉	422	物粉粉粉	447	孟毛猛盲	475	露勞勞勞																						
390	ぬ〜の									422	物粉粉粉	422	物粉粉粉	448	矢厄役約	476	露勞勞勞																						
391	祢	寧	葱	貓	熱	年	念	濡	襦	423	幣平弊弊	423	幣平弊弊	448	矢厄役約	476	露勞勞勞																						
391	ぬ〜の									423	幣平弊弊	423	幣平弊弊	449	矢厄役約	477	露勞勞勞																						











First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit														
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		
797	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	837	電	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	838																							
798	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	838	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	839																							
799	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	839	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	840																							
800	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	關	840	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈	鼈																								
801	險	陰	陰	陰	陰	陰	陰	陰	陰																																				
802	馬	雉	雉	雉	雉	雉	雉	雉	雉																																				
803	滯	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	130																																			
804	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	霽	131																																			
805	飽	觀	觀	觀	觀	觀	觀	觀	觀	132																																			
806	秋	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	133	X	ミ	キ	ソ	ト	フ	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル																						
807	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	鞞	134	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル																							
808	韶	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	135	km	mg	kg	cc	m	l	l	l	l	l	l																								
809	顏	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	136	⊕	⊖	⊗	⊘	⊙	⊚	⊛	⊜	⊝	⊞																									
810	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	顯	137	⊕	⊖	⊗	⊘	⊙	⊚	⊛	⊜	⊝	⊞																									
811	瀾	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	138	⊕	⊖	⊗	⊘	⊙	⊚	⊛	⊜	⊝	⊞																									
812	錢	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	139	⊕	⊖	⊗	⊘	⊙	⊚	⊛	⊜	⊝	⊞																									
813	饅	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽	餽																																				
814	馮	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁																																				
815	馴	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁																																				
816	驅	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁																																				
817	驢	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁	駁																																				
818	體	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚	鬚																																				
819	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻																																				
820	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻	髻																																				
821	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏	閏																																				
822	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑																																				
823	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑																																				
824	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑																																				
825	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑																																				
826	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑																																				
827	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑																																				
828	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑																																				
829	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑	鮑																																				
830	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉																																				
831	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉																																				
832	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉																																				
833	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉	鴉																																				
834	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥																																				
835	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥																																				
836	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥	藥																																				











Weather Indicator List




Basic Status	
	Clear skies (day)
	Clear skies (night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder showers
	Chance of rain: 0%
	Chance of rain: 10%
	Chance of rain: 20%
	Chance of rain: 30%
	Chance of rain: 40%
	Chance of rain: 50%
	Chance of rain: 60%
	Chance of rain: 70%
	Chance of rain: 80%
	Chance of rain: 90%
	Chance of rain: 100%
	Then
	Partly/chance of



Pollen Count	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme


Cherry Blossom	
	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall

Fall Foliage	
	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating

Ultraviolet	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

Typhoon	
	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

Disaster	
	Heavy rain
	Gale

Information	
	Notification



Specifications

SoftBank 831SH

Weight	Approximately 109 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 230 minutes (3G) Approximately 210 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time	Approximately 310 hours (3G) Approximately 280 hours (GSM) (handset closed)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 135 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 49 x 105 x 15.9 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Above values calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting set to **Off**.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

Handset Materials

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side, Keypad side)	Nylon resin/SUS (insert-molded)/UV painting
Housing (Display back, Keypad side hinge)	ABS resin/SUS (insert-molded)/UV painting
Housing (Display back, Keypad side, battery side)	ABS resin/UV painting
Display window, back panel, camera lens, Infrared Port, camera ornament panel	Acrylic resin
Center Key	Aluminum, anodized aluminum paint, spinning
Multi Selector	PC resin, solid printing (back)
Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, TV & Text Key, Multi Job & Manner Key, Dictionary Key, Keypad	PC resin

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Side Keys	PC resin, mirror finish
External Device Port Cover, Headphone Port Cover, Memory Card Slot Cover	PC resin/Elastomeric resin/UV painting
Charging Terminals	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screws (Display side)	SWCH16A/Black nickel plating
Screws (Keypad side, battery side)	SWCH16A/Trivalent chromate
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)

Accessory

Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	710 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 37.7 x 46.9 x 4.2 mm (without protruding parts)



Getting Started

■ Standby Shortcut

Savable Items	30 per sheet
---------------	--------------

Basic Operations

■ Text Entry

User Dictionary	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 15 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
Acquire Dictionary	5 dictionaries
Paste List	10 text strings
Recoverable Deleted Characters	15,360 characters (30,720 bytes)
Dictionary	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases

■ Phone Book

Entry	1,000 entries
Name/Reading	Last/First: 32 characters each
Phone Number	5 numbers (32 digits each)
Mail Address	5 addresses (128 characters each)
Category	16 Categories
Address	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
Office	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
Homepage	1,024 bytes
Note	256 characters
Mail Groups	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

Calling

Dialed Numbers	Dialed Numbers: 30 records Dialed Ranking: 10 records
Received Calls	30 records
Answer Phone/ Caller Voice	20 messages or 90 seconds
Auto Answer List	10 numbers
Decoration Call	100 KB including 20 characters
Speed Dial/Mail	100 numbers/addresses

Messaging

Memory	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	
	Sent Messages	5 MB (or 1,000 messages for Sent Messages)
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	100 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)
PC Mail/S! Mail Subject	512 single-byte characters	
PC Mail/S! Mail Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
SMS Message	160 single-byte alphanumeric	
Auto Resend	2 times	
Attachment	20 files or 1 MB*	
Send Reservation	10 messages	
Signature	256 single-byte characters	
Recipient	20 numbers/addresses	
Folder	20 folders (20 sort keys each)	
Chat Folder	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)

Graphic Mail	1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/ My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file)	
3D Pictogram	150 characters	
Auto Reply	20 numbers/addresses (256 single-byte characters each)	
Anti Spam Measures	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

*Limit may be lower depending on message text, etc.

■ PC Mail Settings

PC Mail Account	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
Set Receiving	User Name	128 characters
	Password	40 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
	Port Number	1 to 65535
Set Sending	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
PC Mail DL	Individual Address	20 addresses

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Download	Yahoo! Keitai	300 KB per page
	PC Site Browser	1 MB per file
History	300 pages	
URL Entry Log	10 URLs	
Bookmarks/ Saved Pages	100 pages	
Tab	3 tabs at one time	
Input Memory	20 entries	
Streaming History	20 URLs	
RSS Feed	30 entries (60 KB per entry)	



Digital TV

Recorded File	ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard)
Recording Time (example)	80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card
Marker	99 Markers (10 per file)
Split File	99 portions per file
Reservation List	5 entries (4 hours each on 1 GB Memory Card)

Camera & Imaging

Mobile Camera

Effective Pixels	3.2 Megapixels
Auto Shut-off Time	Approximately 3 minutes

Photo Camera

Zoom	1x - 25x	
Picture Size (W x H dots)	3M	1536 x 2048 (QXGA)
	Full HD	1080 x 1920
	2M	1200 x 1600 (UXGA)
	1.2M	960 x 1280 (Quad-VGA)
	VGA	480 x 640
	Wallpaper	240 x 400
	QVGA	240 x 320
QQVGA	120 x 160	
Scanner Image Size (W x H dots)	Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960	
File Format	JPEG	
Memory	Approximately 260 files (at 3M, Normal Quality)	
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Shooting Distance	Macro: 10 cm	

Other	Use 40 KB or smaller transparent PNG files as Frames
-------	--

Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 12x	
Record Size (W x H dots)	Extended Video	320 x 240 (QVGA)
		240 x 176 (HQVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
	For Message	128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
		320 x 240 (QVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
File Format	3GP	
Recording Time per Shot	Extended Video	Approximately 30 minutes* on Memory Card
	For Message	1 MB or 295 KB
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	

*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.

Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (240 x 400)
		Power On/Off (240 x 400)
		Incoming Call (160 x 160)
		Alarm (240 x 104)
		Pictogram (96 x 96)
		QVGA (240 x 320)
		Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
Composite	Merge Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots

Media Player

Supported Formats	WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (SD-Audio standard) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)
-------------------	---

S! Applications

Memory	100 items or 100 MB (shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)
--------	---



Handy Extras

■ PIM/Lifestyle

Calendar/ Tasks	300 entries, Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays
Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters
Wakeup TV	Auto Shut-off Approximately 30 minutes
Calculator	999,999,999,999
Expenses Memo	30 entries (999,999.99 yen each)
Osaifu-Keitai®	Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumerics

*Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of December 2008.

■ Clocks/Gauges

Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records
Countdown Timer	99 minutes 59 seconds in 1-second increments
World Clock	City name: 16 characters

■ Doc./Rec.

Document Viewer	Supported Formats	PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
	File Size	10 MB
Notepad	500 entries (8,192 characters each)	
Voice Recorder	For Message	Approximately 10 minutes (message size limit: 1 MB) or 3 minutes (message size limit: 300 KB) per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds

Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes
Create QR Code	Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji	
Scan Text	256 characters	

Entertainment & Communication

■ Widget

Savable Items	6 widgets (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status: 1, other: 5) per sheet x 4 sheets
----------------------	--

■ S! Quick News

Savable Items	Special: 1 item News Flash: 1 item General: 4 items
----------------------	---

■ e-Books

Text Copy	20 characters
------------------	---------------

■ S! Loop

S! Loop List	5 items
---------------------	---------

■ S! Friend's Status

Member	30 members
My Status	Name: 7 characters Comment: 15 characters Status Label: 4 characters
Status Templates	Template name: 12 characters

■ S! Circle Talk

Participant	11 members
Speak Time	30 seconds each
Member List	30 entries (10 members per Group)

■ Blog Tool

Blog Details	5 entries	
Blog Menu	16 characters	
Blog Settings (Mail)	Email Address	128 characters
	Title	32 characters
	Text	128 characters
Blog Settings (Mail)	Picture Size	S (320 x 320) M (640 x 640) L (1024 x 1024) Send
	Blog Settings (Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser)	URL for Posting
	URL for Viewing	1,024 characters

Data Folder

Memory	100 MB (shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library)
---------------	---

Memory Card

Backup File Name	yymmddXX* (XX: 2 digits/alphanumerics)
-----------------------------	--

*yymmdd for Contents Keys.



Connectivity & File Backup

■ Infrared

Infrared Transfer	IrMC 1.1	
	Range	Within 20 cm

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 Backup/Restore/ Synchronization records
-----	---

Network

Add Network	5 Networks
	Country/Network code: 3 digits
	Name: 25 single-byte characters

Reference URLs

■ SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/>

■ microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility

From PC (Japanese)

http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/>

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/service/advanced/sab/>

■ SVG-T

From Handset (Japanese)

http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svg/t/index_pdc.html

■ Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting

From PC

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>



Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure		Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)		
DCIM	XXXSHARP		Still images in DCIM	
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Local Contents	SD Local Contents	
		Mail	Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)	
		My Items	Book	e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks
			Character	PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			CSI	Decoration Call files in Data Folder (Decoration Call)
			Custom Screens	Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)	Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones	Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More	S! Applications
			Hot Status Template	Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Mail Art	Files in Data Folder (Mail Art)
			Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
			Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones)
			Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
		Virtual Space	S! Town files	
Widget	Widget files in Data Folder (Widget)			
WMAudio	WMA files for Media Player (WMA)			
	SH_Folder	Application management files		
	Utility	Backup files (Phone Book), etc.		
	SHARP	MOBILE	Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.	
SD_AUDIO			SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)	



Menu List

Messaging

Function	Refer to	
Received Msg.	P.4-10	
Create Message	P.4-4	
Retrieve New Msg.	P.4-21	
Drafts	P.4-27	
Templates	P.4-20	
Sent Messages	P.4-10	
Unsent Messages	P.4-27	
Chat Folder	P.4-13	
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.4-21
	Retrieve All	P.4-22
	Delete All	P.4-25
	Mailbox Volume	P.4-27
Create New SMS	P.4-7	
Settings	Address Settings	P.4-3
	General Settings	P.4-28
	S! Mail Settings	P.4-30
	PC Mail Settings	P.4-16
	SMS Settings	P.4-32
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.4-18
Set Mail Group	P.4-14	
Memory Status	P.4-24	

Settings: General Settings

	Function	Refer to
Send/ Compose	Delivery Report	P.4-28
	Reply to Settings	P.4-28
	Reply With Text	P.4-28
	Auto Reply	P.4-23
	Set Quick Reply	P.4-23
	Auto Resend	P.4-28
	Sending Status	P.4-28
Receive	Message Notice	P.4-29
	Link to Feeling	P.4-29
	3D Pictogram	P.4-29
	Animation View	P.4-29
Anti Spam Measures	P.4-12	
Report Spam	P.4-28	
Scroll Unit	P.4-28	
Message List View	P.4-28	
Address View	P.4-28	
Received Msg. View	P.4-28	
Sent Msg. View	P.4-28	
Auto Delete	Received Msg.	P.4-28
	Sent Messages	P.4-28

Settings: S! Mail Settings

Function	Refer to	
Message DL(Japan)	P.4-30	
Message DL(Abroad)	P.4-30	
Signature	P.4-18	
Picture Appearance	P.4-30	
Auto Play File	Pictures	P.4-30
	Sounds	P.4-30
Create Msg. Size	P.4-20	
Send File Settings	P.4-30	

Settings: PC Mail Settings

Function	Refer to
PC Mail Account	P.4-16
PC Mail DL	P.4-31
Check New Mail	P.4-31
Word wrap	P.4-31

Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.4-32
Message Center	P.4-32
Char-code	P.4-32



Yahoo! Keitai

Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved Pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-3
History	P.5-3
PC Site Browser	P.5-4
Browser Settings	P.5-11

PC Site Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.5-4
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved Pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-4
History	P.5-4
RSS Feed	P.5-8
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3

PC Site Browser Settings

Font Size	P.5-11
Scroll Settings	P.5-11
Cursor Settings	P.5-11
Downloads	P.5-11
Memory Operation	P.5-9
Security Settings	P.5-15
Download to	P.5-11
Initialized Browser	P.5-15
Reset Settings	P.5-15
Warning Message	P.5-11
Zoom Factor	P.5-11
Softkey Area	P.5-4

Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.5-11
Scroll Unit	P.5-11
Cursor Settings	P.5-11
Downloads	P.5-11
Memory Operation	P.5-9
Security Settings	P.5-15
Download to	P.5-11
Initialized Browser	P.5-15
Reset Settings	P.5-15

S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	P.8-7
Osaifu-Keitai	P.9-13
Notification History	P.8-7
Settings	P.8-12
Information	P.8-12

Settings

Function	Refer to	
Application Volume	P.8-11	
Backlight	P.8-12	
Vibration	P.8-12	
Synchronization	P.8-12	
Notification Setting	P.8-12	
Calls & Alarms	P.8-11	
Screensaver	Switch On/Off	P.8-11
	Activation Time	P.8-11
	Stop Auto Start	P.8-11
Surround	P.8-11	
Set to Default	P.8-12	
Memory All Clear	P.8-12	

TV

Function	Refer to
Digital TV	P.6-5
TV Player	P.6-9
TV Link	P.6-13
TV Listing	P.6-7
Reservation List	P.6-10
Settings	P.6-12

Settings

Function	Refer to	
TV Alarm	P.6-15	
Broadcast Data	Set Recording	P.6-14
	Image Location	P.6-14
	Notify Connection	P.6-12
	Location	P.6-12
	Manufacture Number	P.6-12
Delete StationData	P.6-12	
Screen Size	P.6-5	
Landscape Sets.	P.6-11	
Sound Output	P.6-12	
Calls & Alarms	P.6-12	
TV Reserve Prior	P.6-15	
Auto Exit	Auto Exit Time	P.6-12
	Close Action	P.6-12



Camera

Function		Refer to
Photo Camera		P.7-4
Video Camera		P.7-5
Scan Barcode		P.9-26
Scan Card		P.9-28
Scan Text		P.9-29
Review		P.7-6
Camera Settings	Picture Size	P.7-15
	Picture Quality	P.7-15
	Advanced	P.7-15
Video Settings	Record Time/Size	P.7-16
	Microphone	P.7-16
	Advanced	P.7-15

Photo Camera

Function		Refer to
Shooting Settings	Exposure	P.7-15
	Focus Setting	P.7-15
	White Balance	P.7-15
Modes	Add Frame	P.7-7
	Continuous Shoot	P.7-7
	Camera Effects	P.7-8
	Panorama/Scanner	P.7-8
Barcode/Scan		P.9-26
Data Folder		P.7-6
Picture Size		P.7-15
Scene		P.7-15
Picture Quality		P.7-15
Self-timer		P.7-7
Settings		P.7-15
Help		P.7-15
Mobile Light		P.7-15

Video Camera

Function		Refer to
Record Settings	Exposure	P.7-15
	Focus Setting	P.7-15
Display Size		P.7-16
Data Folder		P.7-6
Record Time/Size		P.7-16
Microphone		P.7-16
Video Quality		P.7-15
Self-timer		P.7-7
Settings		P.7-15
Help		P.7-15
Mobile Light		P.7-15

Camera Settings: Advanced

Function		Refer to
Display Indicators		P.7-15
Shutter Sound		P.7-15
Save Pictures to		P.7-15
Auto Save		P.7-15
Set Send Key		P.7-15

Video Settings: Advanced

Function		Refer to
Save Videos to		P.7-15
Auto Save		P.7-15

Entertainment

Function		Refer to
Mobile Widget		P.10-2
S! Quick News		P.10-5
S! Information Channel/Weather	What's New	P.10-6
	Back Issue	P.10-6
	Registration/Cancel	P.10-6
	Get Latest Contents	P.10-18
	Notification	P.10-18
	Weather Indicator	P.10-6
BookSurfing		P.10-7
e-Book Viewer		P.10-7

S! Quick News

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News List		P.10-5
S! Loop List		P.10-17
Settings	Automatic Update	P.10-17
	Show Image	P.10-17
	Check Schedule	P.10-17
	Change Skin	P.10-17
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	P.10-17

S! Information Channel/Weather: Weather Indicator

Function		Refer to
Weather		P.10-18
Manual Update		P.10-6
Settings	Standby Setting	P.10-18
	Weather Notif.	P.10-18
	Icon Update	P.10-18



Tools

■ PIM/Lifestyle

Function	Refer to	
Calendar	P.9-2	
Alarms	P.9-7	
Wakeup TV	P.9-9	
Tasks	P.9-5	
Calculator	P.9-11	
Expenses Memo	P.9-12	
Osaifu-Keitai	P.9-13	
Simulated Call	Receive Simulated Call	P.9-36
	Switch On/Off	P.9-17
	Set Caller	P.9-17
	Assign Tone	P.9-17
	Receive Timing	P.9-17
	For Silent Mode	P.9-36

■ PIM/Lifestyle: Osaifu-Keitai

Function	Refer to	
Lifestyle-Appli	P.9-13	
IC Card Settings	IC Card Status	P.9-35
	IC Card Lock	P.9-14
	Remote Lock	P.9-15
	Interface Settings	P.9-35
	Balance Info	P.9-35
	Set to Default	P.9-35

■ Clocks/Gauges

Function	Refer to
Stopwatch	P.9-18
Countdown Timer	P.9-19
World Clock	P.9-20
Hour Minder	P.9-21
Battery Meter	P.1-19

■ Doc./Rec.

Function	Refer to	
Dictionary	P.2-12	
Search	P.2-14	
Document Viewer	P.9-22	
Notepad	P.9-23	
Scratch Pad	P.2-15	
ASCII Art	P.9-24	
Voice Recorder	Record Time	P.9-37
	Ring Songs/Tones	P.9-25
	Save Recording to	P.9-37
Barcode/Scan	Scan Barcode	P.9-26
	Open Barcode	P.9-38
	Create QR Code	P.9-27
	Scan Card	P.9-28
	Scan Text	P.9-29
	Scanned Results	P.9-38
Phone Help	P.1-19	

Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.7-9
DCIM	P.12-2
Ring Songs/Tones	P.9-25
S! Appli	P.8-7
Widget	P.10-2
Music	P.12-2
Videos	P.12-2
Lifestyle-Appli	P.9-13
Books	P.12-2
Customized Screen	P.2-4
Status Templates	P.12-2
Decoration Call	P.3-6
Flash@	P.12-2
Other Documents	P.12-2
Memory Status	P.12-2

Media Player

Function	Refer to	
Music	P.8-4	
Videos	P.8-5	
Streaming	P.5-12	
Settings	Delete All WMA	P.8-9
MTP Mode	P.8-3	



■ Music

Function	Refer to	
Last Played Music	P.8-8	
My Music	P.8-6	
SD AUDIO	P.8-9	
WMA	P.8-4	
Download Music	P.8-3	
Music Search	P.8-3	
Settings	Sound Effects	P.8-8
	Playback Mode	P.8-8

■ Videos

Function	Refer to	
Last Played Video	P.8-8	
My Videos	P.8-5	
SD VIDEO	P.8-5	
Download Videos	P.8-3	
Settings	Playback Mode	P.8-8
	Backlight	P.8-8
	Display Size	P.8-8
	Sound Effects	P.8-8
	Web Link Setting	P.8-8

Communication

Function	Refer to
S! Town	P.1-20
S! Loop	P.1-20
S! Friend's Status	P.10-8
S! Circle Talk	P.10-11
Blog Tool	P.10-13

Phone

Function	Refer to	
Phone Book	P.2-16	
Add New Entry	P.2-16	
Information	P.1-24	
Call Log	P.3-8	
Play Messages	P.3-4	
Call Voicemail	P.3-11	
Category Control	P.2-17	
My Details	P.1-19	
Speed Dial/Mail	P.3-7	
Mail Groups	P.4-14	
S! Addressbook Backup	P.13-10	
Ph.Book Settings	Sort Entries	P.2-18
	Select Phone Book	P.2-23
	Save New Entry	P.2-23
	New Number Prompt	P.2-21
	View Settings	P.2-21
Call Log Settings	P.3-16	
Manage Entries	Copy All	P.2-22
	Memory Status	P.2-22
	Change Mode(All)	P.2-23
	Delete All	P.2-22

Settings

■ Phone

Function	Refer to	
Mode Settings	P.1-25	
Display	P.14-3	
Customize	P.2-4	
Sounds & Alerts	P.2-5	
Date & Time	P.14-2	
Set Key Light	P.14-4	
言語選択 (Language)	P.14-3	
User Dictionary	P.2-11	
Set Key Shortcut	P.1-13	
Ringer Output	P.14-5	
Earpiece Volume	P.3-13	
Change Menu		P.1-16
	Switch On/Off	P.1-21
Double Number	Double Mode	P.1-23
	Password Entry	P.1-26
	Mode Name	P.1-26
	Reject By Line	P.1-26
	Show Missed	P.1-26
	Packet Warning	P.1-26
	Send Priority	P.1-26
Locks	P.11-2	
Software Update	P.15-5	
Master Reset	Reset Settings	P.14-8
	Reset All	P.14-8



Phone: Display

Function	Refer to
Wallpaper	P.2-3
System Graphics	P.14-3
VeilView	P.1-25
Display Effects	P.14-3
Font Settings	P.2-2
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar P.14-4 Show Operator Name P.14-4
Mini Battery	P.1-25
Greeting Message	P.14-3
External Display	Duration P.14-4
	Messages P.14-4
	Display Date&Time P.14-4
	Clock Type P.14-4
Caller Display	P.14-4
Backlight	P.14-3
Display Saving	P.14-3
Dial Number	P.14-3

Phone: Sounds & Alerts

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.14-5
Ringtone/videos	P.2-5
System Sounds	P.14-5
Vibration	P.2-5
Event Light	P.14-5
Status Light	P.14-5
Any Key Answer	P.14-5
Surround	P.14-5

Phone: Date & Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.14-2
Time Correction	P.14-2
Daylight Saving	P.14-2
Set Time Zone	P.14-2
Clock/Calendar	P.14-4
World Clock	P.9-20
Alarms	P.9-7
Set Holiday	P.9-30
Time Format	P.14-2
Date Format	P.14-2
Calendar Format	P.14-2

Phone: Locks

Function	Refer to
PIN Entry	P.11-2
Change PIN2	P.11-4
Function Lock	P.11-2
IP Service Setting	P.14-7
Application Lock	P.11-3
History Lock	P.11-3
Show Secret Data	P.11-3
Set Lock Message	P.11-4
Chg. Handset Code	P.1-18

Connectivity


Function	Refer to
Infrared	Switch On/Off P.13-13
	Send All P.13-4
IC Transmission	Recv. Forwarded P.13-13
	Send All P.13-6
USB Mode	Mass Storage P.13-7
	MTP Mode P.8-3
USB Charge	P.1-24
Memory Card	P.12-6
Backup/Restore	Backup All Items P.13-13
	Backup Selected Items P.13-9
	Restore All Items P.13-13
	Restore Selected Items P.13-9
	Settings/Manage P.13-13

Connectivity: Memory Card

Function	Refer to
DPOF	Number of Copies P.7-14
	Settings P.7-17
	Check Settings P.7-14
	Reset Settings P.7-17
SD Local Contents	P.12-8
Format Card	P.12-6
Memory Status	P.12-2



■ Call

	Function	Refer to
Call Time & Cost	Call Timers	P.3-9
	Data Counter	P.3-17
	Call Costs	P.3-9
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.3-4
	Answer Time	P.3-12
	Outgoing Message	P.3-12
Voicemail/ Divert	Volume	P.3-12
	Voicemail	P.3-11
	Diverts	P.3-10
	Cancel All	P.3-11
Video Call	Status	P.3-18
	Camera Picture	P.3-20
	Incoming Picture	P.3-20
	Outgoing Picture	P.3-20
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.3-20
	Backlight	P.3-20
	Loudspeaker	P.3-20
Mute Microphone	P.3-20	
Remote Monitor	P.3-12	
Show My Number		P.3-19
 Missed Calls		P.3-11
Int'l Calling		P.3-13
Disp. Time/ Cost	Display Call Cost	P.3-17
	Call Time Counter	P.3-17
Call Barring	Outgoing Calls	P.3-19
	Incoming Calls	P.3-19
	Rejected Numbers	P.3-18
	Change NW Password	P.3-18
Minute Minder		P.3-17

	Function	Refer to
Decoration Call	Switch On/Off	P.3-15
	Play in Receiving	P.3-15
	Notice	P.3-15
Auto Answer		P.3-20
Call Waiting		P.3-18

■ Network

	Function	Refer to
Select Network		P.14-6
Select Service		P.14-6
Offline Mode		P.1-17
Retrieve NW Info		P.14-6
Location Info		P.14-7
Network Info		P.14-6
External Device		P.14-6



Index

Number	
3D Pictogram	4-8, 4-29

A

AC Charger	1-4
Accessing Functions	1-11
Accessory	v
After-Sales Services	15-38
Alarms	9-7
Canceling	9-8
Deleting	9-8
Editing entries	9-33
For Manner Mode	9-33
Link to World Clk	9-33
Animation View	4-8
Answer Phone	3-4, 3-12
Anti Spam Measures	4-12, 4-26
Any Key Answer	14-5
Application Lock	11-3
ASCII Art	9-24
Auto Focus	7-2
Auto Reply	4-9, 4-23
Auto Resend	4-2, 4-28
Auto Retry Function	4-2

B

Backlight	14-3
Backup	13-8
Settings/Manage	13-13
Battery	1-4, 15-4
Battery Cover	1-2
Battery Meter	1-19
Blog Tool	10-13, 10-21
Bookmarks	5-7
BookSurfing®	10-7

C

Calculator	9-11, 9-34
Calendar	9-2
Calendar Settings	9-30
Editing schedules	9-31
Call Barring	3-10, 3-18
Call Barring (Incoming Calls)	3-19
Call Barring (Outgoing Calls)	3-19
Call Forwarding	3-10
Call Log	3-8, 3-16
Call Time & Cost	3-9
Data Counter	3-17
Call Time Counter	3-17
Call Waiting	3-10, 3-18
Call Waiting (answering Line 2)	3-18
Caller ID	3-10, 3-19
Camera	7-2
Auto Save	7-15
Capturing Still Images	7-4
Exposure	7-15
Locking focus	7-15
Macro	7-15
Manual Focus	7-15
Mobile Light	7-15
Picture Quality	7-15
Recording Video	7-5
Review	7-6
Save Pictures to	7-15
Save Videos to	7-15
Self-timer	7-7
Send/Blog	7-6
Video Quality	7-15
Center Access Code	1-18
Change NW Password	3-18
Change PIN	11-4
Change PIN2	11-4
Character Code List	15-11

Charging	1-4
Charging Terminals	1-2
Chat Folder	4-13, 4-26
Clock/Calendar	14-4
Composite	7-13
Countdown Timer	9-19
Create Msg. Size	4-20, 4-30
Create QR Code	9-27
Customer Service	15-39
Customized Screen (Japanese)	2-4

D

Data Broadcast (Japanese)	6-6
Change View (Data)	6-12
Returning to initial window	6-12
Set Recording	6-14
Data Folder	12-2
Files (attaching)	4-5, 12-3
Files (moving/copying)	12-4
Files (opening)	12-3
Files (renaming)	12-8
Folders (adding)	12-4
Selecting Multiple Files	12-4
Set Secret (folders)	12-4
Slide Show	12-3
Date & Time	14-2
Daylight Saving	9-20, 14-2
Decoration Call	3-6, 3-15
Delivery Report	4-8, 4-19, 4-28
Dialing from Call Log records	3-16
Dictionary	2-12
Digital TV (→ TV)	6-2
Adding Reception Areas	6-4
Area Setup	6-4
Auto Exit	6-12
Calls & Alarms	6-12
Change Area	6-11
Program Info. Search	6-11



- Screen Size 6-5
 Set Channels 6-11
 Sound Output 6-12
 Subtitle/Sound 6-13
 Tone 6-11
 TV Alarm 6-15
Display 1-2, 1-7
Display (settings) 14-3
Display Call Cost 3-17
Display Effect 4-29
Display Effects 14-3
Display Saving 14-3
Document Viewer 9-22
Double Number 1-21, 1-26
Download Dictionary 2-11
DPOF 7-14
 Add Date 7-17
 Check Settings 7-14
 For All Pictures 7-14
 Index Print 7-17
Dual Mode 1-22
- E**
- Earpiece 1-2
 Earpiece Volume 3-13
 e-Book Library 10-19
 e-Book Viewer 10-7
 e-Books (Japanese) 10-7, 10-19
 Emergency Calls 3-2
 English 14-3
 Event Light 14-5
 Expenses Memo 9-12
 External Camera 1-2
 External Device Port 1-2
 External Display 1-2, 1-10, 14-4
- F**
- Face Arrange 7-12
 Feeling Mail (receiving) 4-8
 Feeling Mail (sending) 4-5
- Focus (locking) 7-15
 Focus Setting 7-15
 Font Size 2-2
 Format Card 12-6
 Function Lock 11-2
- G**
- General Notes xii
 Graphic Mail 4-6
 Group Calling 3-10, 3-18
 Group Calling (opening another line) 3-18
 Guide Usage Notes ii
- H**
- Handset Closed 1-2
 Handset Code 1-18
 Handset Keys 1-3
 Handset mail address 4-3
 Handset Open 1-2
 Handset Parts 1-2
 Handset Positions 1-2
 Handset Power On/Off 1-6
 Handset Responses 2-5
 Headphone Port 1-2
 Headphones (answering calls) 3-12
 History Lock 11-3
 Hold 3-12
 Hour Minder 9-21
 Assign Tone/Video 9-36
 For Manner Mode 9-36
 Link to World Clk 9-36
 Vibration 9-36
- I**
- IC Card 9-14
 IC Card Lock 9-14
 IC Transmission 13-5
 Indicators 1-8
 Camera (Viewfinder) 7-3
 Display 1-8
- External Display 1-10
 Messaging (message list) 4-9
 Music Playback Window 8-4
 Video Playback Window 8-5
Information window 1-7
Infrared 13-2
 Receiving files 13-3
 Sending files 13-4, 13-13
Infrared Port 1-2
Internal Antenna 1-2
International calls 3-3, 3-13
Internet 5-2
 Accessing 5-3, 5-4
 Basic Operations 5-5
 Browser Settings 5-11
 Enter URL 5-3, 5-4
 History 5-3, 5-4
 Saving Bookmarks/pages 5-7
Int'l Call 3-4
IP Service Setting 14-7
- K**
- Key Assignments 15-8
 Keypad Lock 1-19
- L**
- Language 14-3
 Large Font Menu 2-2
 Link to Feeling 4-29
 Link to World Clk 9-33, 9-36
 Locks 1-18, 11-2
 Loudspeaker 3-14, 3-20, 10-20
- M**
- Mail Groups 4-14
 Changing members 4-26
 Deleting 4-26
 Edit Name 4-26
Main Menu 1-11
Manner mode 1-17



- Mass Storage** 13-7
- Master Reset** 14-8
- Format Card 12-6
- Reset All 14-8
- Reset Settings 14-8
- Max Cost** 3-17
- Media Player** 8-2
- Delete All WMA 8-9
- Playlists 8-6, 8-9, 8-10
- Memory All Clear (S! Applications)** 8-12
- Memory Card** 12-5
- Format Card 12-6
- Opening files 12-6
- Memory Card Structure & Contents** 15-23
- Menu List** 15-24
- Camera 15-26
- Communication 15-28
- Data Folder 15-27
- Entertainment 15-26
- Media Player 15-27
- Messaging 15-24
- Phone 15-28
- S! Appli. 15-25
- Settings 15-28
- Tools 15-27
- TV 15-25
- Yahoo! Keitai 15-25
- Message List View** 4-28
- Message Notice** 4-29
- Messages (creating/sending) ...** 4-4, 4-7, 4-17
- 3D Pictogram 4-18
- Attachments 4-20
- Drafts 4-27
- Edit 4-27
- Edit & Send 4-27
- Graphic Mail 4-20
- Inserting signature manually 4-18
- Messaging Settings 4-19
- Preview Message 4-4
- Recipient status 4-18
- Recipients (editing) 4-18
- Resend 4-27
- Save to Drafts 4-19
- Send Reservation 4-19
- Set Auto Play File 4-20
- Set Sent Cancel 4-19
- Signature 4-18
- Speed Dial/Mail 4-18
- Templates 4-20
- Messages (deleting)** 4-17, 4-24
- Auto Delete 4-28
- Messages (forwarding)** 4-27
- Messages (protecting)** 4-10
- Messages (receiving/checking)** 4-8
- Mail List 4-21
- Message List 4-9, 4-24
- Message Window 4-9, 4-22
- Opening new mail out of Standby 4-21
- Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually 4-30
- Retrieving PC Mail 4-17, 4-31
- Save to Data Folder 4-22
- Messages (sorting)** 4-12
- Anti Spam Measures 4-12, 4-26
- Messaging (→ SMS, S! Mail, PC Mail)** 4-2
- General Settings 4-28
- PC Mail Settings 4-31
- Receive (settings) 4-29
- S! Mail Settings 4-30
- Send/Compose (settings) 4-28
- SMS Settings 4-32
- Microphone** 1-2
- Minute Minder** 3-17
- Missed Call Notification** 3-11
- Mobile Light** 1-2
- Mobile Widget** 10-2
- Mode Settings** 1-25
- MTP Mode** 8-3
- Multi Job** 1-14
- Music (deleting)** 8-9
- Music (downloading)** 8-3
- Music (playing)** 8-4, 8-8
- My Details** 1-19
- Sending via IC Transmission 13-13
- Sending via Infrared 13-13
- N**
- Network Password** 1-18
- Notepad** 9-23
- Edit Text 9-37
- Change Category 9-37
- O**
- Offline Mode** 1-17
- Optional Services** 3-10
- Optional Services (checking status)** 3-18
- Osaifu-Keitai®** 9-13
- Balance Info 9-35
- Checking e-money balance 9-35
- IC Card Settings 9-14
- Locking 9-14
- Set to Default 9-35
- P**
- Pager Code List** 15-10
- PC (connecting handset)** 13-7
- PC Mail** 4-2, 4-15
- PC Mail (sending)** 4-17
- PC Site Browser** 5-4
- Pen Light** 1-19
- Phone Book (deleting)** 2-22
- Phone Book (editing)** 2-21
- Phone Book (saving)** 2-16
- Phone Book (using)** 2-18
- Phone Book search** 2-18
- Phone Help** 1-19
- Picture Editor** 7-9
- PIN** 15-2
- PIN2** 15-2
- PIN Entry** 11-2



PIN Lock..... 15-2
 Playlists..... 8-6, 8-9, 8-10

Q

Quick Operations 1-11
 Quick Reply 4-23

R

Received Msg. View 4-28
 Record Caller Voice 3-14
 Reference URLs 15-22
 Reject (calls) 3-12
 Remote Lock (Osaifu-Keitai0) 9-15
 Call Remote Lock 9-16
 Count for Lock 9-35
 Mail Remote Lock 9-15
 Notice Settings 9-35
 Remote Monitor 3-12
 Reply 4-9, 4-17, 4-23
 Auto Reply 4-23
 Quick Reply 4-23
 Opening received message for reference 4-23

Reset (→ Master Reset) 14-8
 Reset All 14-8
 Reset Settings 14-8
 Retrieve NW Info 14-6
 Retrieving Network Information 1-6
 Review 7-6
 RSS Feeds 5-8

S

S! Addressbook Back-up 13-10
 Confirming user ID & password 13-14
 Set Auto Sync 13-14
 Sync History 13-14
 S! Applications 8-7
 S! Circle Talk 10-11, 10-20
 Accepting requests 10-12
 Initiating 10-12
 IP Service Setting 14-7

 Registering Members 10-11
 S! Familiar Usability 2-4
 S! FeliCa (→ Osaifu-Keitai®) 9-13
 S! Friend's Status 10-8, 10-19
 IP Service Setting 14-7
 Opening Member Status 10-9
 S! Information Channel (Japanese) ... 10-6, 10-18
 Weather Indicator 10-6
 S! Loop (Japanese) 1-20
 S! Mail 4-2
 Attaching Files 4-5
 Create Msg. Size 4-20, 4-30
 Feeling Mail 4-5
 Graphic Mail 4-6
 S! Mail Settings 4-30
 S! Mail (sending) 4-4
 S! Quick News (Japanese) 10-5
 Automatic Update 10-17
 Deleting items 10-17
 S! Loop List 10-17
 S! Town (Japanese) 1-20
 Safety Precautions vi
 SAR xviii
 Saved Pages 5-7, 5-13
 Scan Barcode 9-26
 Open Barcode 9-38
 Scanning during text entry 9-38
 Using scan results 9-38
 Scan Card 9-28
 Using scan results 9-40
 Scan Text 9-29
 Scanning during text entry 9-40
 Using scan results 9-41
 Schedules (→ Calendar) 9-2
 Scratch Pad 2-15
 SD Local Contents 12-8
 Search 2-14
 Security Codes 1-18
 Sent Msg. View 4-28
 Set as Wallpaper 12-7

Set Date/Time 14-2
 Set Key Light 14-4
 Set Key Shortcut 1-13
 Set Sent Cancel 4-19
 Set Time Zone 9-20, 14-2
 Set to Default (S! Applications) 8-12
 Shortcuts 1-11
 Show My Number 3-19
 Show Secret Data 11-3
 Side Keys 1-3
 Signature 4-18
 Simple Menu 1-16
 Simulated Call 9-17
 Slide W paper 2-3
 Small Light 1-2
 SMS 4-2
 SMS Settings 4-32
 SMS (sending) 4-7
 Snooze 9-7, 9-8
 Softkeys 1-7
 Software Update 15-5
 Sounds & Alerts 2-5, 14-5
 Speaker 1-2
 Specifications 15-18
 Specifications (by function) 15-19
 Basic Operations 15-19
 Calling 15-19
 Camera & Imaging 15-20
 Connectivity & File Backup 15-22
 Data Folder 15-21
 Digital TV 15-20
 Entertainment & Communication 15-21
 Getting Started 15-19
 Handy Extras 15-21
 Media Player 15-20
 Memory Card 15-21
 Messaging 15-19
 Network 15-22
 S! Applications 15-20
 Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser 15-19



Speed Dial/Mail	3-7, 4-18
Standby	1-6
Standby Shortcuts	1-15
Status Icon List	1-20
Status Templates	12-2
Still images (capturing)	7-4
Add Frame	7-7
Camera Effects	7-8
Continuous Shoot	7-7
Panorama Picture	7-8
Picture Size	7-15
Scanner	7-8
Scene	7-15
Shutter Sound	7-15
White Balance	7-15
Still images (capturing & sending)	7-4
Still images (editing)	7-9
Additional editing options	7-16
Changing sizes	7-10
Face Arrange	7-12
Merge Panorama	7-13
Stopwatch	9-18
Strap Eyelet	1-2
Streaming	5-3, 5-12
Swap Calls	3-18
System Graphics	14-3
System Sounds	14-5

T

Table of Contents	iii
Tasks	9-5
Deleting Tasks	9-6
Editing tasks	9-32
Opening Tasks	9-6
Text (editing)	2-10
Text Entry	2-6
Emoticons	2-8
Hiragana	2-7
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion	2-9

Input/Conversion	2-20
Inserting line breaks	2-19
Inserting Phone Book entry items	2-19
Inserting spaces	2-19
Katakana	2-8
Mail & Web Extensions	2-9
One-Hiragana Conversion	2-8
Phonetic Conversion	2-7
Pictograms & Symbols	2-8
Quick Conversion	2-9
Reset Log	2-19
Switching Entry Modes	2-6
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	2-19
Using Character Codes	2-19
Using Pager Code	2-19
When Target Word is Not Listed	2-7
Time Correction	14-2
Troubleshooting	15-6
TV (watching)	6-5
Channels (saving)	6-11
Data Broadcast (Japanese)	6-6
Help	6-11
Program Info	6-7
TV Listing (Japanese)	6-7
TV Player	6-8
TV programs (recording/playing)	6-8, 6-9
Details	6-14
Marker List	6-14
Markers	6-14
Memory Remaining	6-14
Playback Pattern	6-14
Playing split files	6-14
Recorded programs (deleting)	6-14
Recorded programs (renaming)	6-14
Split File	6-14
TV Reserve Prior	6-15
TV Timers (watching/recording)	6-10
Setting Timer via Program Info	6-7
Timer entries (editing/deleting)	6-15

Timer log records (opening/deleting)	6-15
TV Alarm	6-15
Wakeup TV	9-9

U

USB Charge	1-4, 1-24
User Dictionary	2-11
Deleting entries	2-20
USIM Card	15-2
USIM PINs (→ PIN)	15-2
Utility Software	13-7

V

VeilView	1-19
Vibration	2-5
Video (deleting)	8-10
Video (downloading)	8-3
Video (playing)	8-5, 8-8
Video (recording)	7-5
Display Size	7-16
Microphone	7-16
Record Time/Size	7-16
Video (recording & sending)	7-5
Video Calling	3-5
Remote Monitor	3-12
Video Calls (answering)	3-5
Video Calls (placing)	3-5
Voice Calling	3-3
Voice Calls (answering)	3-3
Voice Calls (placing)	3-3
Voice Calls (placing while abroad)	3-4
Voice Recorder	9-25
Record Time	9-37
Save and Send	9-37
Save Recording to	9-37
Voice mail	3-10
Volume (ringtones)	14-5

W

Wakeup TV	9-9
------------------------	-----



Wallpaper	2-3
Slide W paper	2-3
Warranty	15-38
Weather Indicator	10-6
Icon Update	10-18
Manual Update	10-6
Weather	10-18
Weather Indicator List	15-17
Widgets	10-2
World Clock	9-20

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
----------------------------	-----

Objectives

Accessing Secret Files/Entries

Data Folder	12-4
Messaging folders	4-11
Phone Book	2-17
Schedules/tasks	9-4

Accessing the Internet

From message text	4-23
From scan results	9-38, 9-41
Media Player	8-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
RSS Feeds	5-8
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3

Browsing/Viewing

Document Viewer	9-22
e-Books	10-7
PC Site Browser	5-4
S! Information Channel	10-6
S! Quick News	10-5
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3

Calculating

Calculator	9-11
Expenses Memo	9-12

Canceling

Alarm	9-8
Answer Phone	3-4

Call Forwarding	3-11
Customized Screen	2-19
Download Dictionary	2-11
Function Lock	11-2
Hour Minder	9-21
IC Card Lock	9-14
Keypad Lock	1-19
Large Font Menu	2-2
Manner mode	1-17
Offline Mode	1-17
S! Familiar Usability	2-19
S! Information Channel	10-6
Secret folders	4-25, 12-4
Simple Menu	1-16
Speed Dial entries	3-7
Voicemail	3-11

Changing

Font Size	2-2
Font Weight	2-2
Handset Code	1-18
Handset mail address	4-3
Network Password	3-18
PIN & PIN2	11-4

Changing Ringtones

Phone Book	2-17
Ringtone/videos	2-5
Via Data Folder	12-7

Composing/Sending Messages

Feeling Mail	4-5
From Call Log records	3-16
From Internet pages	5-10
From message text	4-23
From Phone Book	2-22
From received messages	4-9
From scan results	9-38, 9-41
From Scratch Pad	2-15
From sent messages	4-27
Graphic Mail	4-6, 4-20
PC Mail	4-17
S! Mail	4-4

SMS	4-7
-----------	-----

Copying

Calculation results	9-34
Data Folder files	12-4
From text entry window	2-10
Scan results	9-39, 9-40, 9-41
Text (e-Books)	10-19
Text (Internet pages)	5-10
Text (Messaging)	4-23
Text (S! Information Channel pages)	10-18

Downloading

Customized Screen	2-4
e-Books	10-7
Music	8-3
S! Applications	8-11
Video	8-3
Widgets	10-2

Exchanging Files

IC Transmission	13-5
Infrared	13-2
Mass Storage	13-7
MTP Mode	8-3

Hiding Files/Entries

Data Folder	12-4
Messaging folders	4-11
Phone Book	2-17
Schedules/tasks	9-30, 9-32

Inserting/Removing

Battery	15-4
Memory Card	12-5
USIM Card	15-3

Locking/Restricting

Application Lock	11-3
Call Log	11-3
Function Lock	11-2
Incoming/outgoing calls	3-18, 3-19
Keypad Lock	1-19
Mail records	11-3
Osaiifu-Keitai®	9-14
PIN Entry	11-2



- Managing Schedules**
 - Calendar9-2
 - Tasks.....9-5
- Measuring Time**
 - Countdown Timer.....9-19
 - Stopwatch9-18
- Notifying Phone Number**
 - Opening My Details.....1-19
 - Via IC Transmission13-13
 - Via Infrared13-13
- Placing Calls**
 - By entering phone numbers.....3-3
 - From Call Log records.....3-16
 - From Internet pages.....5-10
 - From message text.....4-23
 - From Phone Book2-18
 - From scan results.....9-38, 9-41
 - International calls.....3-3
 - Speed Dial3-7
 - Video Calls.....3-5
 - While abroad.....3-4
- Playing**
 - Answer Phone messages/Caller Voice3-4
 - Files (Scan Barcode)9-39
 - Music.....8-4
 - Recorded TV programs.....6-9
 - Recorded TV programs from Timer log...6-15
 - Split files (TV).....6-14
 - Streams.....5-12
 - Video8-5
 - Voice files.....9-25
 - Voice messages3-11
- Rejecting**
 - Calls from public phones.....3-18
 - Calls from specific numbers.....3-18
 - Calls from unsaved numbers3-18
 - Calls with undisplayable Caller ID.....3-18
 - Calls without Caller ID.....3-18
- Resetting/Formatting**
 - All settings.....14-8
- Handset.....14-8
- Memory Card12-6
- Saving**
 - Backup13-9
 - Captured still images.....7-4, 7-7, 7-8
 - Draft messages4-19
 - Edited still images7-9
 - Files (Internet).....5-10
 - Files (S! Information Channel pages)....10-18
 - Graphic Mail templates4-6
 - Mail attachments4-22
 - Notepad entries.....9-23
 - Phone Book entries.....2-16
 - Recorded video7-5
 - Scan results9-38, 9-40
 - TV channels6-11
- Saving Phone Book Entries**
 - Add New Entry2-16
 - Data Folder files12-7
 - During a call3-14
 - From Call Log records.....3-16
 - From message text.....4-22
 - From received messages4-22
 - From scan results.....9-38, 9-40
- Scanning**
 - Business cards.....9-28
 - QR Codes9-26
 - Text.....9-29
- Searching**
 - Messages.....2-14, 4-11
 - Music to download8-3
 - Music to play8-4
 - Notepad entries.....9-37
 - Phone Book.....2-18
 - Text (Internet pages)5-10
 - TV program information6-11
 - Video to play8-5
 - Web Search2-14
- Sending via Mail**
 - ASCII Art entries9-24
 - Data Folder files4-5, 12-3
 - Notepad entries.....9-37
 - QR Codes9-27
 - Scan results9-39, 9-40, 9-41
 - Still images.....7-4, 7-6
 - URLs5-10, 5-12
 - Video7-5
 - Voice files9-37
- Setting Wallpaper**
 - From attached files.....4-22
 - From Phone menu.....2-3
 - From scan results.....9-39
 - Via Data Folder12-7
- Showing in Standby**
 - Clock/Calendar14-4
 - S! Applications8-11
 - Wallpaper2-3
 - World Clock.....9-20
- Using as Alarm Clock**
 - Alarm.....9-7
 - Hour Minder9-21
 - Wakeup TV.....9-9
- Using Away from Home**
 - Alarm.....9-7
 - Camera7-2
 - Digital TV.....6-2
 - Hour Minder9-21
 - Osaifu-Keitai®9-13
 - Pen Light1-19
 - Scratch Pad.....2-15
 - Search.....2-14
 - Voice Recorder.....9-25



Warranty & Service

■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

■ After-Sales Services

See **P.15-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.15-39**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.



Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113



SoftBank 831SH User Guide

March 2009, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 831SH

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルに協力も。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.